**Data Science using Python**

1 About Python

1.1 Python Overview

1.2 History of Python

1.3 Python Features

1.4 Python Environment

1.5 Getting Python

1.6 Case Studies

* 1. Exercises

2 The context of Software Developments

2.1 Install Python

2.1.1 Unix & Linux Installation

2.1.2 Windows Installation

2.1.3 Macintosh Installation

2.1.4 Setting up PATH

2.1.5 Setting path at Unix/Linux

2.1.6 Setting path at Windows

2.1.7 Python Environment Variables

2.2 Running python programs

2.2.1 Interactive Interpreter

2.2.2 Script from the Command-line

2.2.3 Integrated Development Environment

2.3 Python Basic Syntax

2.4 First Steps Towards Programming

2.5 Interative Mode Programming

2.6 Script Mode Programming

* 1. Case Studies
  2. Exercises

3 Python Simple Basics

3.1 Python Identifiers

3.2 Reserved Words

3.3 Lines and Indentation

3.4 Multi-Line Statements

3.5 Quotation in Python

3.6 Comments in Python

3.7 Using Blank Lines

3.8 Waiting for the User

3.9 Multiple Statements on a Single Line

3.10 Multiple Statement Groups as Suites

3.11 Command-Line Arguments

3.12 Accessing Command-Line Arguments

Example

3.13 Parsing Command-Line Arguments

3.14 getopt.getopt method

3.15 exception getopt.GetoptError

Example

* 1. Case Studies
  2. Exercises

4 Python Variable Types Values and Identifiers

4.1 Assigning Values to Variables

4.2 Multiple Assignment

4.3 Standard Data Types

4.4 Data Type Conversion

4.4 Python Numbers

4.4.1 Number Type Conversion

4.4.2 Floating-point Numbers

4.4.3 Mathematical Functions

4.4.4 Syntax

4.4.5 Parameters

4.4.6 Return Value

Example

Description

4.4.7 Mathematical Constants

4.5 Python Strings

4.5.1 Accessing Values in Strings

4.5.2 Integer and String Values

4.5.3 Control Codes within Strings

4.5.4 Controlling the print Function

4.5.5 String Formatting

4.5.6 Multi-line Strings

4.5.7 Updating Strings

4.5.8 Escape Characters

4.5.9 String Special Operators

4.5.10 String Formatting Operator

4.5.11 Triple Quotes

4.5.12 Raw String

4.5.13 Unicode String

4.5.14 Built-in String Methods

Description

Syntax

Parameters

Return Value

Example

4.6 User Input

4.7 Variables and Assignment

4.8 Identifiers

* 1. Case Studies
  2. Exercises

5 Expressions and Arithmetic

5.1 Expressions

5.2 Mixed Type Expressions

5.3 Operator Precedence and Associativity

5.4 Formatting Expressions

5.5 Python Basic Operators

5.5.1 Python Arithmetic Operators

Example

5.5.2 Python Comparison Operators

Example

5.5.3 Python Assignment Operators

Example

5.5.4 Python Bitwise Operators

Example

5.5.5 Python Logical Operators

Example

5.5.6 Python Membership Operators

Example

5.5.7 Python Identity Operators

Example

5.5.8 Python Operators Precedence

Example

5.6 Case Studies

5.7 Exercises

6 More Control Flow Tools

6.1 The simple If statements

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.2 if...else statements

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.3 The elif Statement

Example

nested if statements

Syntax

Example

6.4 The while Statement

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.5 Definite Loops vs. Indefinite Loops

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.6 The for Statement

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.7 Nested Loops

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.8 Abnormal Loop Termination

The break statement

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.9 The continue tatement

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.10 while/else and for/else

Syntax

Flow Diagram

Example

6.11 Infinite Loops

6.12 Iteration Examples

6.13 Multi-way Decision Statements

6.14 Multi-way Versus Sequential Conditionals

6.15 Conditional Expressions

6.16 Errors in Conditional Statements

6.17 Logic Complexity

6.18 Computing Square Root

6.19 Drawing a Tree

* 1. Printing Prime Numbers
  2. Case Studies
  3. Exercises

7 Using Functions

7.1 Introduction to Functions

7.2 Functions and Modules

7.3 The Built-in Functions

7.4 Standard Mathematical Functions

7.5 time Functions

7.5 Random Numbers

7.6 System-specific Functions

7.7 The eval and exec Functions

7.7 Turtle Graphics

7.8 Other Techniques for Importing Functions and Modules

7.9 Writing Functions

7.9.1 Function Basics

7.9.2 Parameter Passing

7.9.3 Documenting Functions

7.9.4 Function Examples

7.9.5 Better Organized Prime Generator

7.9.6 Command Interpreter

7.9.7 Restricted Input

7.9.8 Better Die Rolling Simulator

7.9.9 Tree Drawing Function

7.9.10 Floating-point Equality

7.9.11 Refactoring to Eliminate Code Duplication

7.9.12 Custom Functions vs. Standard Functions

7.10 More on Functions

7.10.1 Global Variables

7.10.2 Default Parameters

7.10.4 Introduction to Recursion

7.10.5 Making Functions Reusable

7.10.6 Functions as Data

7.10.7 Separating Concerns with Pluggable Modules

7.10.8 Lambda Expressions

7.10.9 Generators

7.10.10 Local Function Definitions

7.10.11 Decorators

7.10.12 Partial Application

7.11 Case Studies

* 1. Exercises

8 Python Objects

8.1 Python Objects

8.2 Standard Types

8.3 Other Built-in Types

8.4 Internal Types

8.5 Standard Type Operators

8.6 Standard Type Built-in Functions

8.7 Categorizing the Standard Types

8.8 Unsupported Types

* 1. Case Studies
  2. Exercises

9 Sequences: Strings, Lists, and Tuples

9.1 Sequences

9.1.1 Strings

9.1.2 Strings and Operators

9.1.3 String-only Operators

9.1.4 String Built-in Methods

9.1.5 Special Features of Strings

9.1.6 Related Modules

9.1.7 Summary of String Highlights

9.2 Lists

9.2.1 Operators

9.2.2 Built-in Functions

9.2.3` List Type Built-in Methods

9.2.4 Special Features of Lists

9.3 Tuples

9.3.1 Tuple Operators and Built-in Functions

9.3.2 Special Features of Tuples

9.3.3 Related Modules

9.3.4 \*Shallow and Deep Copies

* 1. Case Studies
  2. Exercises

10. Introduction to Dictionaries

10.1 Operators

10.2 Built-in Functions

10.3 Built-in Methods

10.4 Dictionary Keys

10.5 Exercises

* 1. Case Studies
  2. Exercises

11. Errors And Exceptions

11.1 What Are Exceptions?

112 Exceptions in Python

11.3 Detecting and Handling Exceptions

11.4 \*Exceptions as Strings

11.5 \*Exceptions as Classes

11.5 Raising Exceptions

11.6 Assertions

11.7 Standard Exceptions

11.8 \*Creating Exceptions

11.9 Why Exceptions (Now)?

11.10 Why Exceptions at All?

11.11 Exceptions and the sys Module

* 1. Case Studies
  2. Exercises

12. Modules

12.1 What are Modules?

12.2 Modules and Files

12.3 Namespaces

12.4 Importing Modules

12.5 Importing Module Attributes

12.6 Module Built-in Functions

12.7 Packages

* 1. Other Features of Modules
  2. Case Studies

12.10 Exercises

13 Classes and OOP

13.1 Introduction

13.2 Object-oriented Programming

13.3 Classes

13.4 Class Attributes

13.5 Instances

13.6 ore Python Programming

13.7 Instance Attributes

13.8 Binding and Method Invocation

13.9 Composition

13.10 Subclassing and Derivation

13.11 Inheritance

13.12 Built-in Functions for Classes, Instances, and Other Objects

13.13 Type vs. Classes/Instances

13.14 Customizing Classes with Special Methods

13.15 Privacy

13.16 Delegation

* 1. Related Modules and Documentation
  2. Case Studies
  3. Exercises

14. Files and Input/Output

14.1 File Objects

14.2 File Built-in Function [ open() ]

14.3 File Built-in Methods

14.4 File Built-in Attributes

14.5 Standard Files

14.6 Command-line Arguments

14.7 File System

14.8 File Execution

14.9 Persistent Storage Modules

* 1. Related Modules
  2. Case Studies
  3. Exercises

15. March Towards Implementation

* 1. Example Project 1
  2. Example Project 2

# 1.About Python

## 1.1 Python Overview

* Open source
* General purpose
* Easy to interface with C/objC/Java/Fortran/C++
* Great interactive environment

Website and downloads: [www.python.org](http://www.python.org)

Documentation: [www.python.org](http://www.python.org)/doc/

## 1.2 History of Python

Innovative languages are mostly a product of either, a large well-funded research project or,frustration out of the lack of tools that were needed at the time to accomplish mundane or time taking tasks, where most of them could be automated could be automated.

* Conceived in the late 1980s
* Work on python began in 1989 by Guido van Rossum, at CWI in the Netherlands
* Made as a successor to ABC capable of exception handling and interfacing with the Amoeba operating system
* Released for public distribution in February 1991 labeled version 0.9.0,
* Already present at python version 0.9.0 in development were core features classes with inheritance, exception handling, functions, and the core data types of “list”, “dict” and “str” and so on.

## 1.3 Features of Python

* High level
* Object oriented
* Scalable
* Extensible
* Portable
* Easy to learn
* Easy to read
* Easy to maintain
* Robust
* Effective as a rapid prototyping tool
* A memory manager
* Interpreted and byte compile

## 1.4 Python Environment

Before we start writing our programs in python , it’s important to know how to set up a Python environment. Python is available on a wide number of platforms. Open a terminal window and type "python" to check if its already installed and which version you have if it is already installed.

* Unix (Solaris, Linux, FreeBSD, AIX, HP/UX, SunOS, IRIX, et al.)
* Win 9x/NT/2000 (Windows 32-bit systems)
* Macintosh (PPC, 68K)
* OS/2
* DOS (multiple versions)
* Windows 3.x
* PalmOS
* Windows CE
* Acorn/RISC OS
* BeOS
* Amiga
* VMS/OpenVMS
* QNX
* VxWorks
* Psion
* Python is also ported to Java and .Net VM’s

## 1.5 Getting Python

For the most up-to-date and current source code, binaries, documentation, news, etc., check either the main Python language site or the PythonLabs Web site:

<http://www.python.org> (community home page)

<http://www.pythonlabs.com> (commercial home page)

If you do not have access to the Internet readily available, all three versions (source code and binaries) are available on the CD-ROM in the back of the book. The CD-ROM also features the complete online documentation sets viewable via offline browsing or as archive files which can be installed on hard disk. All of the code samples in the book are there as well as the Online Resources appendix section (featured as the Python "hotlist").

# Context of Software Developments

A computer program, from one perspective, is a sequence of instructions that dictate the flow of electrical impulses within a computer system. These impulses affect the computer’s memory and interact with the display screen, keyboard, and mouse in such a way as to produce the “magic” that permits humans to perform useful tasks, solve high-level problems, and play games. One program allows a computer to assume the role of a financial calculator, while another transforms the machine into a worthy chess opponent. Note the two extremes here:

• at the lower, more concrete level electrical impulses alter the internal state of the computer, while

• at the higher, more abstract level computer users accomplish real-world work or derive actual pleasure.

So well is the higher-level illusion achieved that most computer users are oblivious to the lower-level activity (the machinery under the hood, so to speak). Surprisingly, perhaps, most programmers today write software at this higher, more abstract level also. An accomplished computer programmer can develop sophisticated software with little or no interest or knowledge of the actual computer system upon which it runs. Powerful software construction tools hide the lower-level details from programmers, allowing them to solve problems in higher-level terms.

The concepts of computer programming are logical and mathematical in nature. In theory, computer programs can be developed without the use of a computer. Programmers can discuss the viability of a program and reason about its correctness and efficiency by examining abstract symbols that correspond to the features of real-world programming languages but appear in no real-world programming language.While such exercises can be very valuable, in practice computer programmers are not isolated from their machines. Software is written to be used on real computer systems. Computing professionals known as software engineers develop software to drive particular systems. These systems are defined by their underlying hardware and operating system. Developers use concrete tools like compilers, debuggers, and profilers.

## Software

A computer program is an example of computer software. One can refer to a program as a piece of software as if it were a tangible object, but software is actually quite intangible. It is stored on a medium. A hard drive, a CD, a DVD, and a USB pen drive are all examples of media upon which software can reside. The CD is not the software; the software is a pattern on the CD. In order to be used, software must be stored in the computer’s memory. Typically computer programs are loaded into memory from a medium like the computer’s hard disk. An electromagnetic pattern representing the program is stored on the computer’s hard drive. This pattern of electronic symbols must be transferred to the computer’s memory before the program can be executed. The program may have been installed on the hard disk from a CD or from the Internet. In any case, the essence that was transferred from medium to medium was a pattern of electronic symbols that direct the work of the computer system.

These patterns of electronic symbols are best represented as a sequence of zeroes and ones, digits from the binary (base 2) number system. An example of a binary program sequence is

10001011011000010001000001001110

To the underlying computer hardware, specifically the processor, a zero here and three ones there might mean that certain electrical signals should be sent to the graphics device so that it makes a certain part of the display screen red. Unfortunately, only a minuscule number of people in the world would be able to produce, by hand, the complete sequence of zeroes and ones that represent the program Microsoft Word

for an Intel-based computer running the Windows 7 operating system. Further, almost none of those who could produce the binary sequence would claim to enjoy the task.

The Word program for older Mac OS X computers using a PowerPC processor works similarly to the Windows version and indeed is produced by the same company, but the program is expressed in a completely different sequence of zeroes and ones! The Intel Core 2 Duo processor in the Windows machine accepts a completely different binary language than the PowerPC processor in the Mac. We say the processors have their own machine language.

## Development Tools

Software can be represented by printed words and symbols that are easier for humans to manage than binary sequences. Tools exist that automatically convert a higher-level description of what is to be done into the required lower-level code. Higher-level programming languages like Python allow programmers to express solutions to programming problems in terms that are much closer to a natural language like English. Some examples of the more popular of the hundreds of higher-level programming languages that have been devised over the past 60 years include FORTRAN, COBOL, Lisp, Haskell, C, Perl, C++, Java, and C#. Most programmers today, especially those concerned with high-level applications, usually do not worry about the details of underlying hardware platform and its machine language.

One might think that ideally such a conversion tool would accept a description in a natural language, such as English, and produce the desired executable code. This is not possible today because natural languages are quite complex compared to computer programming languages. Programs called compilers that translate one computer language into another have been around for 60 years, but natural language processing is still an active area of artificial intelligence research. Natural languages, as they are used

by most humans, are inherently ambiguous. To understand properly all but a very limited subset of a natural language, a human (or artificially intelligent computer system) requires a vast amount of background knowledge that is beyond the capabilities of today’s software. Fortunately, programming languages provide a relatively simple structure with very strict rules for forming statements that can express a solution to any program that can be solved by a computer.

Consider the following program fragment written in the Python programming language:

**subtotal = 25**

**tax = 3**

**total = subtotal + tax**

These three lines do not make up a complete Python program; they are merely a piece of a program. The statements in this program fragment look similar to expressions in algebra. We see no sequence of binary digits. Three words, subtotal, tax, and total, called variables, are used to hold information. Mathematicians have used variables for hundreds of years before the first digital computer was built. In programming, a variable represents a value stored in the computer’s memory. Familiar operators (= and +) are used instead of some cryptic binary digit sequence that instructs the processor to perform the operation. Since this program is expressed in the Python language, not machine language, it cannot be executed directly on any processor. A program called an interpreter translates the Python code into machine code when a user runs the program.

The higher-level language code is called source code. The interpreted machine language code is called the target code. The interpreter translates the source code into the target machine language.

The beauty of higher-level languages is this: the same Python source code can execute on different target platforms. The target platform must have a Python interpreter available, but multiple Python interpreters are available for all the major computing platforms. The human programmer therefore is free to think about writing the solution to the problem in Python, not in a specific machine language.

Programmers have a variety of tools available to enhance the software development process. Some common tools include:

**Editors**. An editor allows the programmer to enter the program source code and save it to files. Most programming editors increase programmer productivity by using colors to highlight language features. The syntax of a language refers to the way pieces of the language are arranged to make well-formed sentences. To illustrate, the sentence

“The tall boy runs quickly to the door.”

uses proper English syntax. By comparison, the sentence

“Boy the tall runs door to quickly the.”

is not correct syntactically. It uses the same words as the original sentence, but their arrangement does not follow the rules of English.

Similarly, programming languages have strict syntax rules that must be followed to create well formed programs. Only well-formed programs are acceptable and can be compiled and executed. Some syntax-aware editors can use colors or other special annotations to alert programmers of syntax errors before the program is compiled.

**Compilers**. A compiler translates the source code to target code. The target code may be the machine language for a particular platform or embedded device. The target code could be another source language; for example, the earliest C++ compiler translated C++ into C, another higher-level language. The resulting C code was then processed by a C compiler to produce an executable program. (C++ compilers today translate C++ directly into machine language.)

**Interpreters**. An interpreter is like a compiler, in that it translates higher-level source code into machine language. It works differently, however. While a compiler produces an executable program that may run many times with no additional translation needed, an interpreter translates source code statements into machine language as the program runs. A compiled program does not need to be recompiled to run, but an interpreted program must be interpreted each time it is executed. In general, compiled programs execute more quickly than interpreted programs because the translation activity occurs only once. Interpreted programs, on the other hand, can run as is on any platform with an appropriate interpreter; they do not need to be recompiled to run on a different platform. Python, for example, is used mainly as an interpreted language, but compilers for it are available. Interpreted languages are better suited for dynamic, explorative development which many people feel is ideal for beginning programmers.

**Debuggers**. A debugger allows programmers to simultaneously run a program and see which source code line is currently being executed. The values of variables and other program elements can be watched to see if their values change as expected. Debuggers are valuable for locating errors (also called bugs) and repairing programs that contain errors. (See Section 3.4 for more information about programming errors.)

**Profilers**. A profiler is used to evaluate a program’s performance. It indicates how many times a portion of a program is executed during a particular run, and how long that portion takes to execute. Profilers also can be used for testing purposes to ensure all the code in a program is actually being used somewhere during testing. This is known as coverage. It is common for software to fail after its release because users exercise some part of the program that was not executed anytime during testing. The main purpose of profiling is to find the parts of a program that can be improved to make the program run faster.

Many developers use integrated development environments (IDEs). An IDE includes editors, debuggers, and other programming aids in one comprehensive program. Examples of commercial IDEs include Microsoft’s Visual Studio 2010, the Eclipse Foundation’s Eclipse IDE, and Apple’s XCode. IDLE is a very

simple IDE for Python.

# Installing Python

Python distribution is available for a wide variety of platforms. You need to download only the binary code applicable for your platform and install Python. If the binary code for your platform is not available, you need a C compiler to compile the source code manually. Compiling the source code offers more flexibility in terms of choice of features that you require in your installation.

## Unix & Linux Installation

Here are the simple steps to install Python on Unix/Linux machine.

• Open a Web browser and go to www.python.org/download/

• Follow the link to download zipped source code available for Unix/Linux.

• Download and extract files.

• Editing the *Modules/Setup* file if you want to customize some options.

• **run** ./configure script

• make

• make install

This will install python in a standard location */usr/local/bin* and its libraries are installed in*/usr/local/lib/pythonXX* where XX is the version of Python that you are using.

## Windows Installation

Here are the steps to install Python on Windows machine.

• Open a Web browser and go to www.python.org/download/

• Follow the link for the Windows installer *python-XYZ.msi* file where XYZ is the version you are going toinstall.

• To use this installer *python-XYZ.msi*, the Windows system must support Microsoft Installer 2.0. Just save the installer file to your local machine and then run it to find out if your machine supports MSI.

• Run the downloaded file by double-clicking it in Windows Explorer. This brings up the Python install wizard, which is really easy to use. Just accept the default settings, wait until the install is finished, and you're ready to roll!

## Macintosh Installation

Recent Macs come with Python installed, but it may be several years out of date. See

www.python.org/download/mac/ for instructions on getting the current version along with extra tools to support development on the Mac. For older Mac OS's before Mac OS X 10.3 (released in 2003), MacPython is available."

Jack Jansen maintains it and you can have full access to the entire documentation at his Web site - **Jack Jansen**

**Website :** http://www.cwi.nl/~jack/macpython.html

.

## Setting up a path

Programs and other executable files can live in many directories, so operating systems provide a search path that lists the directories that the OS searches for executables.The path is stored in an environment variable, which is a named string maintained by the operating system. These variables contain information available to the command shell and other programs. The **path** variable is named PATH in Unix or Path in Windows (Unix is case-sensitive; Windows is not). In Mac OS, the installer handles the path details. To invoke the Python interpreter from any particular directory, you must add the Python directory to your path.

### Setting up a path at Unix/Linux

To add the Python directory to the path for a particular session in Unix:

• **In the csh shell:** type

setenv PATH "$PATH:/usr/local/bin/python" and press Enter.

• **In the bash shell (Linux):** type

export PATH="$PATH:/usr/local/bin/python" and press Enter.

• **In the sh or ksh shell:** type

PATH="$PATH:/usr/local/bin/python" and press Enter.

**Note:** /usr/local/bin/python is the path of the Python directory

### Setting up a path at Windows

To add the Python directory to the path for a particular session in Windows:

• **At the command prompt :** type

path %path%;C:\Python and press Enter.

**Note:** C:\Python is the path of the Python directory

## Python Environment Variables

Here are important environment variables, which can be recognized by Python:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Variable** | **Description** |
| PYTHONPATH | Has a role similar to PATH. This variable tells the Python interpreter where to locate the module files you import into a program. PYTHONPATH should include the Python source library directory and the directories containing your Python source code. PYTHONPATH is  sometimes preset by the Python installer. |
| PYTHONSTARTUP | Contains the path of an initialization file containing Python source code that is executed every time you start the interpreter (similar to the Unix .profile or .login file). This file, often named .pythonrc.py in Unix, usually contains commands that load utilities or modify PYTHONPATH. |
| PYTHONCASEOK | Used in Windows to instruct Python to find the first case-insensitive match in an import statement. Set this variable to any value to activate it. |
| PYTHONHOME | An alternative module search path. It's usually embedded in the PYTHONSTARTUP or PYTHONPATH directories to make switching module libraries easy. |

# Running Python Programs

There are three different ways to start Python:

## Interactive Interpreter

You can enter **python** and start coding right away in the interactive interpreter by starting it from the command line. You can do this from Unix, DOS or any other system, which provides you a command-line interpreter or shell window.

$python # Unix/Linux

or

python% # Unix/Linux

or

C:>python # Windows/DOS

Here is the list of all the available command line options:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Option** | **Description** |
| -d | provide debug output |
| -O | generate optimized byte code (resulting in .pyo files) |
| -S | do not run import site to look for Python paths on start up |
| -v | verbose output (detailed trace on import statements) |
| -X | disable class-based built-in exceptions (just use strings); obsolete starting with version 1.6 |
| -c cmd | run Python script sent in as cmd string |
| file | run Python script from given file |

## Script from the command line

A Python script can be executed at command line by invoking the interpreter on your application, as in the following:

$python script.py # Unix/Linux

or

python% script.py # Unix/Linux

or

C:>python script.py # Windows/DOS

**Note:** Be sure the file permission mode allows execution.

## Integrated development Environment(IDE)

You can run Python from a graphical user interface (GUI) environment as well. All you need is a GUI application on your system that supports Python.

• **Unix:** IDLE is the very first Unix IDE for Python.

• **Windows:** PythonWin is the first Windows interface for Python and is an IDE with a GUI.

• **Macintosh:** The Macintosh version of Python along with the IDLE IDE is available from the main website, downloadable as either MacBinary or BinHex'd files.

Before proceeding to next chapter, make sure your environment is properly set up and working perfectly fine. If you are not able to set up the environment properly, then you can take help from your system admin.

All the examples given in subsequent chapters have been executed with Python 2.4.3 version available on CentOS flavor of Linux.

# Python Basic Syntax

Python is an interpreted language which means it is executed sequentially from the first line to the last line, and of course control flow can be changed by control flow statements.

**Sample python code**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15 | # -\*- coding: utf-8 -\*-  """  Created on Sat Feb 16 19:00:02 2019  author: khalid  """  x = 37 \*\* 2 - 23 # This is a comment  y = 'Hi' # This is another comment  z = 3.14  if z == 3.14 or y == 'Hi':  x = x + 1  y = y + ' world!' # string concatenation  print(x)  print(y) |

## First Python Program

There are two ways you can take to run your python code.

1. Interactive mode programming: Using the python shell to run single a statement at a time
2. Script mode programming: Running your python script as a whole.

**Interactive Mode Programming: (Using the Python shell )**

Invoking the interpreter without passing a script file as a parameter brings up the following prompt:



Type the following text to the right of the Python prompt and press the Enter key:

>>>print(“Hi World!”)

this will produce following result:

Hi World!

**Script Mode Programming:**

Invoking the interpreter with a script parameter begins execution of the script and continues until the script is finished. When the script is finished, the interpreter is no longer active.

Let us write a simple Python program in a script. All python files will have extension **.py**. So put the following source code in a test.py file.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | print("Hello, welcome to Python!") |

Here, I assumed that you have Python interpreter set in PATH variable. Now, try to run this program as follows:

$ python test.py

This will produce the following result:

Hello, welcome to Python!

Let's try another way to execute a Python script. Below is the modified test.py file:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | #!/usr/bin/python  print("Hello, Python!") |

Here, I assumed that you have Python interpreter available in /usr/bin directory. Now, try to run this program as follows

$ chmod +x test.py # to make file executable

$./test.py

This will produce the following result:

Hello, Python!

## Python Identifiers

A Python identifier is a name used to identify a variable, function, class, module or other object. An identifier starts with a letter A to Z or a to z or an underscore (\_)followed by zero or more letters, underscores and digits (0 to 9).

Python does not allow punctuation characters such as @, $ and % within identifiers. Python is a case sensitive programming language. Thus, **Manpower** and **manpower** are two different identifiers in Python.

Here are following identifier naming convention for Python:

• Class names start with an uppercase letter and all other identifiers with a lowercase letter.

• Starting an identifier with a single leading underscore indicates by convention that the identifier is meant to be

private.

• Starting an identifier with two leading underscores indicates a strongly private identifier.

• If the identifier also ends with two trailing underscores, the identifier is a language-defined special name.

## Reserved words

The following list shows the reserved words in Python. These reserved words may not be used as constant or variable or any other identifier names. All the Python keywords contain lowercase letters only.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| and | exec | not |
| assert | finally | or |
| break | for | pass |
| class | from | pass |
| continue | global | raise |
| def | if | return |
| del | import | try |
| elif | in | while |
| else | is | with |
| except | lambda | yield |

## Lines and Indentation

One of the first caveats programmers encounter when learning Python is the fact that there are no braces to indicate blocks of code for class and function definitions or flow control. Blocks of code are denoted by line indentation, which is rigidly enforced.

The number of spaces in the indentation is variable, but all statements within the block must be indented the same amount. Both blocks in this example are fine:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | if True:  print("True")  else:  print("False") |

However, the second block in this example will generate an error:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | if True:  print("Answer")  print("True")  else:  print("Answer")  print("False") |

Thus, in Python all the continuous lines indented with similar number of spaces would form a block. Following is the example having various statement blocks:

**Note:** Don't try to understand logic or different functions used. Just make sure you understood various blocks even if they are without braces.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  1415  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39  40  41  42 | # The block names that are given, are only  # for the purpose of understanding.  #Level 0-------Level 1--------Level 2--------Level 3---------------Level 4 ||  import sys, csv  import numpy as np  import keras  x = 1 # block 0  y = 0 # block 0  if x: # block 0  x + y # block 0.1  print("%i" %(x + y)) # block 0.1  for i in range(10): # block 0.1  try: # block 0.1.1  print("%i" %(x + i + r)) # block 0.1.1.1  except NameError: # block 0.1.1  print("Can't use a variable that wasn't defined ") # block 0.1.1.2  x # block 0.1  def func(): # block 0  def func2(): # block 0.2  print("Hello", x) # block 0.2.1  func2() # block 0.2  print("Hello", y) # block 0.2  def main(): # block 0  i = 0 # block 0.3  while i <= 5: # block 0.3  print("%i" %(i + y)) # block 0.3.1  i += 1 # block 0.3.1  i = 0 # block 0.3  x = 0 # block 0  y = 0 # block 0  main() # block 0 |

## Multi-Line Statements

Statements in Python typically end with a new line. Python does, however, allow the use of the line continuation character (\) to denote that the line should continue. For example:

total = item\_one + \

item\_two + \

item\_three

Statements contained within the [], {} or () brackets do not need to use the line continuation character. For example:

days = ['Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday', 'Thursday', 'Friday']

## Quotation in python

Python accepts single ('), double (") and triple (''' or """') quotes to denote string literals, as long as the same type of quote starts and ends the string.

The triple quotes can be used to span the string across multiple lines. For example, all the following are legal:

word = 'word'

sentence = "This is a sentence."

paragraph = """This is a paragraph. It is

made up of multiple lines and sentences."""

## Comments in python

A hash sign (#) that is not inside a string literal begins a comment. All characters after the # and up to the physical line end are part of the comment and the Python interpreter ignores them.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | # This is the first comment  print("Hello, Python!") # This is the second comment |

This will produce the following result:

Hello, Python!

A comment may be on the same line after a statement or expression:

name = "Khalid" # This is another comment

You can comment multiple lines as follows:

# This is a comment.

# also a comment.

# another comment.

# Multi-line comments.

## Using blank Lines

A line containing only white-space, possibly with a comment, is known as a blank line and Python totally ignores it. In an interactive interpreter session, you must enter an empty physical line to terminate a multi-line statement.

## Waiting for the users

The following line of the program displays the prompt, Press the enter key to exit and waits for the user to press the Enter key:

raw\_input("\n\n Press the enter key to exit.")

Here, "\n\n" are being used to create two new lines before displaying the actual line. Once the user presses the key, the program ends. This is a nice trick to keep a console window open until the user is done with an application.

## Multiple statements on a single line

The semicolon ( ; ) allows multiple statements on the single line given that neither statement starts a new code block. Here is a sample snip using the semicolon:

import sys; x = 'foo'; sys.stdout.write(x + '\n')

## Multiple statement groups as suites

A group of individual statements, which make a single code block are called **suites** in Python. Compound or complex statements, such as if, while, def, and class, are those

which require a header line and a suite.

Header lines begin the statement (with the keyword) and terminate with a colon ( : ) and are followed by one or more lines, which make up the suite. For example:

if expression :

<suite>

elif expression :

<suite>

else :

<suite>

## Command line arguments

You may have seen, for instance, that many programs can be run so that they provide you with some basic information about how they should be run, Python lets you do this with -h:

$ python -h

usage: python [option] ... [-c cmd | -m mod | file | -] [arg] ...

Options and arguments (and corresponding environment variables):

-c cmd : program passed in as string (terminates option list)

-d : debug output from parser (also PYTHONDEBUG=x)

-E : ignore environment variables (such as PYTHONPATH)

-h : print this help message and exit

[ etc. ]

You can also program your script in such a way that it should accept various options.

### 5.12.1 Accessing command line arguments

Python provides a **getopt** module that helps you parse command-line options and arguments.

$ python test.py arg1 arg2 arg3

The Python **sys** module provides access to any command-line arguments via the **sys.argv**. This serves two purpose:

* sys.argv is the list of command-line arguments.
* len(sys.argv) is the number of command-line arguments.

Here sys.argv[0] is the program i.e. script name.

**Example:**

Consider a script myprog.py

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | import sys  print('Number of arguments ', len(sys.argv), 'arguments.')  print('Argument List ', str(sys.argv)) |

When the above script is run as follows

$ python myprog.py arg1 arg2 arg3s

Output you would get is

Number of arguments 4 arguments.

Argument List ['myprog.py', 'arg1', 'arg2', 'arg3']

Note that the script’s name is the first argument, and its also considered when counting the number of arguments

### 5.12.2 Parsing command line arguments

Python provided a **getopt** module that helps you parse command-line options and arguments. This module provides two functions and an exception to enable command-line argument parsing. This tutorial would discuss about one method and one exception, which are sufficient for your programming requirements.

**getopt.getopt( ) method:**

This method parses command-line options and parameter list. Following is simple syntax for this method:

getopt.getopt(args, options[, long\_options])

Here is the detail of the parameters:

* **args**: This is the argument list to be parsed.
* **options**: This is the string of option letters that the script wants to recognize, with options that require an argument should be followed by a colon ( : ).
* **long\_options**: This is optional parameter and if specified, must be a list of strings with the names of the long options, which should be supported. Long options, which require an argument should be followed by an equal sign ('='). To accept only long options, options should be an empty string.

This method returns value consisting of two elements: the first is a list of **(option, value)** pairs. The second is the list of program arguments left after the option list was stripped.

Each option-and-value pair returned has the option as its first element, prefixed with a hyphen for short options

(e.g., '-x') or two hyphens for long options (e.g., '--long-option').

**Exception getopt.GetoptError :**

This is exception gets raised when an unrecognized option is found in the argument list or when an option requiring an argument is given none.

The argument to the exception is a string indicating the cause of the error. The attributes **msg** and **opt** give the error message and related option.

# Python data types, values and Identifiers

Variables in python are reserved spaces in memory that can hold some value, so whenever a variable is created some space is reserved in memory to hold the value of that variable. Every variable in python is a specific data type which tells the python interpreter how much memory should be reserved for the variable and what type of values the variable can hold.

In python variables don’t need to be declared to assign values to them, so values can be assigned to variable names without explicit declaration of that variable beforehand,the declaration happens when you assign values to them.

## Assigning values to variables

Assignments in python creates references not copies.Variables hold references to objects and do not hold the object itself. Names don’t have intrinsic types objects have types, the type of reference is determined by the type of object assigned to the name. Remember the words “Name”, “Variable” and “Identifier” refer to the same thing.

A name is created the first time it appears on the left hand side of an assignment. The code below shows some examples.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20 | # -\*- coding: utf-8 -\*-  """  Created on Wed Feb 20 15:42:18 2019  author: khalid  """  x = 3 + 12 / 2  y = "I'm being assigned to the variable y"  a = 1989  b = 3.14  c = "Guido van Rossum"  print(x)  print(y)  print(a)  print(b)  print(c) |

This python code when executed gives the following result.



The garbage collector deletes reference after any names that are bound to the reference have passed out of scope. When the reference is deleted the object being referenced is deleted.

In the case where a non existent name(a variable that doesn’t exist yet) is accessed an error is raised. Take a look at the example.



If a name is accessed after assignment it returns the value the name was last assigned.

Take a look at the example given below.



## Multiple assignment

Python allows assigning a single value to several names(variables) simultaneously. For example:



Memory is reserved for the integer object with the value 1, and all three variables refer to the same object. Python also allows assigning multiple objects to multiple variables like the example below.



Here two integer objects are assigned to the names ‘a’ and ‘b’ , a float object is assigned to the name ‘c’ and a string object is assigned to the name ‘d’.

## Naming rules

Names are case sensitive they can contain letters, numbers and underscores but they cant start with a number.

Examples of valid name instances:

Var, VAR, Var1223, V123Bob, c020b

Examples of invalid instances:

1Var, 2a00

Reserved words cant be used as a variable name, so the following cant be used as names.

and, assert, break, class, continue, def, del, elif, else, except, finally, for, from, global, if, import, in, is, lambda, not, or, pass, raise, return, try, while

## Understanding reference semantics

This may be different from the language that you used to work with but in python an assignment operation changes references instead of making a new copy of the object. This can be better understood with an example.



Here x = y doesn't make a copy of the object y references, instead it makes x reference the object(integer 20) that y refers to.This can prove to be very useful but we have to be careful for example take a loo at the code below.



If this is confusing it’s important to first understand what happens when an assignment operation(like x = 3) is performed.

There is a lot that happens in an assignment. For example this is what happens when the below assignment expression is executed

A = 12

1. First an integer object 12 is created and is stored in memory.



1. A name ‘A’ is created.



1. A reference to the memory location where the integer object 12 is stored at is now assigned to the name ‘A’



The data 12 that was just created is of type integer. In python the data types integer, float, string and tuple are immutable(which means that object cant be changed). This does not mean that we cant change the value of the variable ‘A’, it can still be reassigned to another integer object i.e what ‘A’ refers to can be changed. For example we could still increment ‘A’ even though its data type is immutable.



Lets look at what’s really happening when ‘A’ is incremented(A = A + 1).

1. The reference of ‘A’ is looked up.
2. The value of the integer object at that reference is retrieved.



1. The 12 + 1 increment operation is performed and the result integer object 13 is stored in a new memory location



1. The variable ‘A’ is changed to point to this new integer object.while the previuos integer object ‘12’ is deleted by the garbage collector as there are no variables referring to it.



So for pythons basic data types assignments behaves just as you expect them to.

Take another example.

















These data types that we’ve worked with till now are immutable(the values of the objects cant be changed). Assignments in python works differently when its done with mutable objects.

Data types like lists, dictionaries and user defined types are mutable. When mutable data is changed the change happens in place. This means they are not copied to a new memory location every time they are changed. If you type “y = x”, this changes the value of ‘y’ with the value of ‘x’. Remember a new copy is not created to make a change, the change is performed on the same object(unlike for immutable objects) so all variables referring to this object has its value changed as well. We’ll go through an example on this just to make it clear.



This is what happens when the above code is executed.













Lets look at each of python standard data types briefly one by one.

## Python’s standard data types

If you have experience in other programming languages you would already know that the value that can be stored in variables are of different types. Having different data types is of course a requirement of programmers in general. Each data type defines the different operations possible and it’s storage mechanism.

Python has five standard data types:

* Integers
* Strings
* List
* Tuple
* Dictionary

### 6.5.1 Python Integer(Number)

Integer objects in python are immutable,so the value of the objects can’t be changed so a new object is created every time a change is made to the variable

Number objects are created when a value is assigned to them.



These objects can be deleted using the ‘del’ keyword. The syntax for the ‘del’ command is as follows.

del var1[,var2[,var3[....,varN]]]]

With ‘del’ objects can be deleted one at a time or many at a time. In the following code three variables(a, b, c) are created then ‘a’ and ‘c’ are deleted using ‘del’ command



There are four different numerical types in Python:

1. int : These are standard signed integers. There is no upper limit on the number of bits that an int object can take up so they can take as much as the memory can offer. This can be tested out by running the following script

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | # A python script to show that we can store  # large numbers in python  a = 200000000000000000000000000000000000001  a = a + 11  print(a) |

Output:

200000000000000000000000000000000000001

In python 3 there is only one int type but in python 2.7 there are two int types, one is ‘int’ which is of 32 bit length and the other is ‘long int’ which is the same as the Python 3.x int type(it can store arbitrarily large numbers).

When the following code is run on python 3.x and python 2.7 outputs in each would be as follows

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | # This program shows that there are two types in  # Python 2.7: int and long int  # and in python 3 there is only one type: int  a = 200  print(type(a))  b = 2000000000000000000000000000000000000000000  print(type(b)) |

Output in python 3.x :



Output in python 2.7 :



1. float (floating point real values): floats can be used to represent real numbers with a whole number part and a fractional part.
2. complex (complex numbers): represented by the formula a + bJ, where a and b are real numbers(float), and J is the square root of -1 (the result of which is an imaginary number). Complex numbers aren't that often used by python programmers.

Examples of each numeric type:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **int** | **Long int** | **float** | **complex** |
| 1242 | 5193488661L | 0.0 | 3.14j |
| -0009743 | -0x19323L | -21.9 | 45.j |
| -0x3344 | 0162L | 42.3+e18 | 4e+26J |
| 1 | -05236456727123L | 80.2-E12 | -.6985+0J |
| 0x958 | -47223598762L | -92. | 4.76e-7j |

Remember ‘long int’ is only in python 2.7 which is the same as ‘int’ in python 3.

### 6.5.2 Sequence types(Lists, Tuples and Strings)

Among the standard types in python there are three sequence types Lists, Tuples and Strings.

**List:**

A List is a simple ordered sequence of items, these items can be of different types and can also include other sequence types. Lists are mutable so to the value of list objects can be changed in place with out having to create a copy of the object that has the changed value.

List is the most versatile of the collection types in python. They contain a sequence of items separated by commas(,) and enclosed within square brackets([ ]) This might seem similar to arrays in c, but here items of the list can be of different types.

A list variable in python is created when a list object is assigned to a name as follows.



List are defined using square brackets and commas. Individual members of a list can be accessed using the square bracket notation, the same way arrays are accessed in c as follows.



**Tuple:**

A Tuple is a simple ordered sequence of items, these items can be of different types and can also include sequence types. They are immutable so to change the content of a tuple object a new object with the changed value is created and the tuple variable is made to point to this new object.

Python tuples are similar to lists except that unlike lists they are enclosed within parentheses and tuple objects are immutable. Tuples can be thought of as read only lists.Creating a tuple variable is similar to the creation of a list variable but with parentheses instead of square brackets.



And just like lists, individual members of a tuple can be accessed using the square bracket notation, the same way arrays are accessed in c .



**String:**

Strings in python are a continuous set of characters that are enclosed within quotation marks. Python allows using either single quotes(‘’) or double quotes(“”).Strings are immutable like tuples, so the value of a string object cant be changed in place to change the value of a string object a new object is created with the changed value. Declaration of a string and accessing individual elements of a string are the same as in lists and tuples. Examples of string declaration and access are given below.



### 6.5.3 Operations on sequence types

The operations shown here can be applied to all sequence types. Examples are shown for clarity on how they work. Most examples show the operation performed only on one or two of the sequence types but remember that these operations can be performed on all of the sequence types.

**Positive and Negative index look up:**

Positive index look up counts from the left and starts the count from 0.



Negative index look up counts from the left and starts the count from -1.



When an element that is out of range is accessed the python interpreter gives an index error, an example is shown below.



**Slicing:**

Slicing can be used to return a copy subset of the sequence typed object. The general form of a slicing operation is as follows

<Variable Name>[x : y]

Where ‘x’ and ‘y’ are the first and second indices of the slicing operation. The container is copied from index ‘x’ and the copying is discontinued from index y. Lets go through some examples so its made clear how the slicing operation actually works. We’ll work with the list ‘li’ given below.



The below slicing operation on ‘var’ returns a copy of a subset of ‘var’. Copying starts from the first index(1) and discontinues from the second index(4).



Negative indices can also be used when slicing like below.



The first index can be left blank to return a copy of a subset of the that starts copying from the first element of the container.



The second index can be left blank to start copying from the first index and continue copying till the last element.



To return a copy of the entire container both indices can be left blank



From the above examples it could be understood that for any sequence typed variable say ‘A’

A[ : ] = A[0 : ] != A[0 : -1]

Since lists are mutable sequence types, a change in the objects value happens in place without creating a new copy of the object, but wen the slicing operator is used a new object is created and returned. Take a look at the example given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | list1 = [1, 2, 3, 4]  list2 = list1 # 2 names referring to the same object  # When one name is changed the other changes as well  list2 = list1[ : ] # Name list2 refers to a new object which is a  # copy of a subset list1 |

**The “in” operator:**

The “in” operator can be used as a Boolean test to check whether some value is inside a container object.



For strings the “in” operator can be used to test whether the given sub string exists in the string like in the examples given below.



**The ‘+’ operator:**

This operator is used to concatenate two tuples, strings or lists together the result obtained after use is the new object obtained after concatenation. Concatenation can not be performed with different container types. Here are some examples of the use of the ‘+’ operator with tuples, lists and strings.

With tuples:





With lists:(A new object is returned as the result)



With strings:





**The ‘\*’ operator:**

Produces a new tuple, list or string that has the original value repeated a number of times, the number of repeats is given as an operand to this operator and the other operand is the sequence itself. Lets take a look at some examples.





### 6.5.4 Lists and Tuples (Mutability vs immutability)

Tuple is an immutable type so the value/content of a tuple object can’t be changed the only way to change the value of the a tuple variable is to create a new tuple object with the changed value and assign the new reference to the tuple variable. The value/content of a list can be changed in place as they are mutable, but when a value of a mutable object that is referred to by more than one variable is changed the value is changed for all variables referring to that object.Take a look at the example below.



Tuples can’t be changed but instead make a fresh tuple and assign the reference of it to an already existing name like below.



Unlike tuples, lists are mutable and so they can be changed in place without having to change the reference to a new object



Like in the above example lists can be changed in place. Name “li” still points to the same memory reference when the changed is done. The mutability of lists means that they aren’t as fast as tuples.

Since lists are mutable there are some operations that are applicable only to lists and not tuples. lets go through those operations one by one. The list class has some in built methods that can be used to change the value of the list object or return a value based on the current state of the list object. This is also our first exposure to pythons method syntax.

**append( ) :**

The list class has an append method that can be used to insert a new list element at the end of the list. In the example below a new name “li” is assigned a reference to a list object, then the append method of the list class is called to add the element passed as an argument to method at the end of the list object.



**insert( ) :**

The list class has an insert method that can be used to insert an new element at any location the list. The insert method takes two parameter’s, first one is the location in the list to which the the new element is to be inserted and the second is the element itself. In the below example a new element is inserted at location 2 in the list.



**extend( ) :**

Some times instead of appending single elements at a time we may want to append a list of elements to a list, the list class has a method to do that, the extend method. The extend method takes a list as an argument and appends that list to the list object to which it was called upon. An example is given below.



It may look like the extend method does exactly what the ‘+’ operator does for sequence types but the difference is that the ‘+’ operator creates a new list with a new memory reference, and extend operates on the list object it’s called upon in place.

Extend method takes a list as an argument and append method takes a single object as an argument. Take a look at the example below for more clarity.



**index( ) :**

List class has an index method that returns the index of the first occurrence of the value passed as an argument to the method. If the value passed does not exist in the list then a “value error” is raised by the python interpreter. Examples are shown below.



**count( ) :**

When a value is passed as an argument to the count method it returns the number of occurrences of that value in the list object on which it was called upon.



**remove( ) :**

The remove method of the list class can be used to remove the first occurrence of the value passed as the argument to the method.examples are shown below.





**reverse( ) :**

When the reverse method of the list class is called on a list object it reverses the list object in place in the memory. In the below example when the reverse method is called for a list object, the order of its content are reversed.



**sort( ) :**

The sort method of the list class can be used to sort the contents of the list in place in memory



The sort function of the list class can be passed a user defined function with it’s own approach to sorting a list.



Although lists are slower than tuples, they are much more powerful than tuples and are the most versatile types in python. Lists unlike tuples are mutable, they can be modified and they have a lot of operations that can be performed on them that make them very handy while programming. Tuples are immutable, they can’t be modified and they have much lesser features than lists, although they are faster than lists.

**list( ) and tuple( ) :**

Python provides the list method and tuple method to convert between lists and tuples. The list method takes a tuple and returns a new instance of a list object. The tuple method takes a list and returns a new instance of a tuple object. Some examples are shown below.



### 6.5.5 Dictionary

Python dictionaries are like a hash table,They store a mapping between key’s and value’s. They consist of key value pairs, Where the key can be any of python’s immutable types, although they are usually numbers or strings. Values on the other hand can be any python object. Dictionaries are enclosed within curly braces({ }) and values can be assigned and accessed using square braces( [ ] ). A single dictionary can store values of different types.

Dictionaries have many operations that can be performed on them. It’s possible to define, view, look up and delete the key value pairs in a dictionary object.

**Declaration :**

Dictionaries are enclosed in curly braces( { } ), each key value pair is separated by commas( , ) and a colon( : ) between the key and value of each key and value pair. The keys can be any immutable type in in python and values can be any standard or user defined type in python. Dictionary variables are declared when a dictionary object reference is assigned to a name as in the example below.



**Accessing Values :**

Dictionary values can be accessed using the keys enclosed in square braces like how they are accessed in tuples and lists except in the case of dictionaries the subscript is the key.Some examples are shown below.



Python doesn’t support look ups with the values if a key that doesn’t exist in th e dictionary is looked up a “key error” is raised.



**Changing values :**

Dictionaries are mutable types so the values of the dictionary objects are changed in place in memory. A value corresponding to a dictionary key can be changed as follows

****





**Inserting a new key-value pair :**

A new key-value pair can be inserted into the dictionary by assigning a value to a dictionary key that doesn’t exist yet. An example is shown below.



**del command :**

The del command is used to remove a single key value pair from the dictionary object, only the specified key value pair is deleted the rest of the dictionary is left intact. An example of using the del command is shown below.



**clear( ) :**

The dictionary class has a “clear” method which when called for a dictionary object deletes all the key-value pairs in that dictionary object. It is the same as applying the del command to all keys in the dictionary



Let’s discuss some of the other methods that the python dictionary class offers.

**keys( ) :**

The “keys” method of python’s dictionary class when called for a method returns a list containing all the keys of that dictionary object. An example is shown below.



**values( ) :**

The “values” method of the dictionary class when called for a dictionary object returns a list containing all the values in the dictionary.



**items( ) :**

Python’s dictionary method has a items class which when called on an object returns a list of all the key value pairs as tuples. An example is shown below.



## Data type conversion

There may come situations where it’s need to convert between python’s built in data type, to convert between built in data types the type nae can be used as a function. There are several built in functions to perform a conversion from one type to another type, these functions return a fresh object in memory with the converted value.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Function** | **Description** |
| int(x [,base]) | Converts x to an integer. base specifies the base if x is a string. |
| long(x [,base] ) | Converts x to a long integer. base specifies the base if x is a string. |
| float(x) | Converts x to a floating-point number. |
| complex(real [,imag]) | Creates a complex number. |
| str(x) | Converts object x to a string representation. |
| repr(x) | Converts object x to an expression string. |
| eval(str) | Evaluates a string and returns an object. |
| tuple(s) | Converts s to a tuple. |
| list(s) | Converts s to a list. |
| set(s) | Converts s to a set. |
| dict(d) | Creates a dictionary. d must be a sequence of (key,value) tuples. |
| frozenset(s) | Converts s to a frozen set. |
| chr(x) | Converts an integer to a character. |
| unichr(x) | Converts an integer to a Unicode character. |
| ord(x) | Converts a single character to its integer value. |
| hex(x) | Converts an integer to a hexadecimal string. |
| oct(x) | Converts an integer to an octal string. |

In the next chapter we’ll look into the basic python operator’s.

## Exercises

1. Will the following lines of code print the same thing? Explain why or why not.

**x = 6**

**print(6)**

**print("6")**

2. Will the following lines of code print the same thing? Explain why or why not.

**x = 7**

**print(x)**

**print("x")**

3. What is the largest floating-point value available on your system?

4. What is the smallest floating-point value available on your system?

5. What happens if you attempt to use a variable within a program, and that variable has not been assigned a value?

6. What is wrong with the following statement that attempts to assign the value ten to variable x?

**10 = x**

1. Once a variable has been properly assigned can its value be changed?
2. In Python can you assign more than one variable in a single statement?

9. Classify each of the following as either a legal or illegal Python identifier:

(a) fred

(b) if

(c) 2x

(d) -4

(e) sum\_total

(f) sumTotal

(g) sum-total

(h) sum total

(i) sumtotal

(j) While

(k) x2

(l) Private

(m) public

(n) $16

(o) xTwo

(p) \_static

(q) \_4

(r) \_\_\_

(s) 10%

(t) a27834

(u) wilma’s

10. What can you do if a variable name you would like to use is the same as a reserved word?

11. How is the value 2.45×10−5 expressed as a Python literal?

12. How is the value 0.0000000000000000000000000449 expressed as a Python literal?

13. How is the value 56992341200000000000000000000000000000 expressed as a Python literal?

14. Can a Python programmer do anything to ensure that a variable’s value can never be changed after its initial assignment?

15. Is "i" a string literal or variable?

# 7.Statements, Expressions and operators

In this chapter we’ll get understand the what a statement, expression and an operator in python is. We’ll discuss the different basic operators in python and the operator precedence in python. Let’s get started.

## 7.1 Statements and Expressions

Statements are instructions that the python interpreter could execute. So far only the assignment, del and method invocation statement has been discussed but there are other statements like “for” statements, “if” statements, “while” statements, “import” statements and others.

Expressions, they are a combination of variables, values, function calls and operators. Expressions in python need to be evaluated before they can be used. When an expression is the right hand side of an assignment statement the expression is first evaluated before it is assigned to name. When an expression is passed as the parameter to pythons “print” function the expressions is first evaluated then the result is displayed. In the below examples the expressions are first evaluated then are used.



Here len( ) is a built in python function that returns the length of the string passed as an argument. In the above code “78 + 2 \*\* 1” and “len(“Eclipse!”)” are both expressions they are evaluated before they are used by the print function.

Evaluating an expression results in a value, and that’s the reason why expressions can be on the right hand side of an assignment statement. A value or variable or a function call that return a value are all simple expressions. Evaluating a variable gives the value the variable refers to. It’s important to remember that expressions in python returns a value. Take a look at the code below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | y = 3.1415  x = len("Spyder!")  print(x)  print(y) |

We can see one of the differences between expressions and assignments when the above code is run in the python shell.





We can see that for assignments only the prompt is returned and no value. That’s because assignments statements do not return any values. The assignment statement “y = 3.1415” doesn’t return any value so only the prompt is returned, but the result of the simple expression “3.1415” is returns a value( i.e 3.1415) which creates a new float object in memory and assigns it’s reference to ‘y’. Assignment statements are simply executed and don’t return any value.

When the print statement is called on ‘y’ we can see the value that ‘y’ is referring to as print function returns a value, also when ‘y’ is entered into the shell by itself ‘y’ is evaluated and returned.

## 7.2 What are operators and operands

Operands the tokens in python represent some kind of computation and the computation happens between the operand or operands that are given to the operator to work on.

The following are some legal expressions using arithmetic operator’s.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | # Assignments  x = 10  y = 20  z = 30  # Valid expressions using arithmetic operators  25 + 22  x - 1  y \* 60 + z  x / 60  5 \*\* 2  (5 + 13) \* (55 + 77) |

The operators that python supports are listed below.

* Arithmetic operators
* Relational operators(comparison operators)
* Assignment operators
* Logical operators
* Bitwise operators
* Membership operators
* Identity operators

We’ll go through each of these operators one by one.

## 7.3 Arithmetic operators

The seven arithmetic operators supported by python are listed and described below briefly. We’ll then go through some examples on these arithmetic operators.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operator** | **Description** |
| + | Addition - Adds values on either side of the operator |
| \_ | Subtraction - Subtracts right hand operand from left hand operand |
| \* | Multiplication - Multiplies values on either side of the operator |
| / | Division - Divides left hand operand by right hand operand |
| % | Modulus - Divides left hand operand by right hand operand and returns  remainder |
| \*\* | Exponent - Performs exponential (power) calculation on operators |
| // | Floor Division - The division of operands where the result is the quotient in  which the digits after the decimal point are removed. |

Now lets look at some example code that demonstrates how the arithmetic operators work in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  1617  1819  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28 | #======================================  # Assignments  #======================================  x = 100  y = 200  z = 500  #======================================  # Using arithmetic operators  #======================================  z = x + y  print("Line 1 - Value of z is ", z)  z = x - y  print("Line 2 - Value of z is ", z)  z = x \* y  print("Line 3 - Value of z is ", z)  z = x / y  print("Line 4 - Value of z is ", z)  z = x % y  print("Line 5 - Value of z is ", z)  x = 2  y = 3  z = x \*\* y  print("Line 6 - Value of z is ", z)  x = 10  y = 5  z = x//y  print("Line 7 - Value of z is ", z) |

The above code gives the output given below.



## 7.4 Relational operators

The six relational operators that python supports are listed and described in the table below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operators** | **Description** |
| == | Checks if the value of two operands is equal or not, if yes then condition becomes true. |
| != | Checks if the value of two operands is equal or not, if values are not equal then condition becomes true. |
| > | Checks if the value of left operand is greater than the value of right operand, if yes then condition becomes true. |
| < | Checks if the value of left operand is less than the value of right operand, if yes then condition becomes true. |
| >= | Checks if the value of left operand is greater than or equal to the value of right operand, if yes then condition becomes true. |
| <= | Checks if the value of left operand is less than or equal to the value of right operand, if yes then condition becomes true. |

The example code below demonstrates the use of pythons relational operators. As relational operators give a Boolean result of either true or false, if-else statements are used to demonstrate the the behaviour of relational operators in python .

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  1617  1819  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38 | #======================================  # Assignments  #======================================  x = 10  y = 5  z = 0  #======================================  # Using relational operators  #======================================  if( x == y ):  print("Line 1 - x is equal to y")  else:  print("Line 1 - x is not equal to y")  if( x != y ):  print("Line 2 - x is not equal to y")  else:  print("Line 2 - x is equal to y")  if( x < y ):  print("Line 3 - x is less than y")  else:  print("Line 3 - x is not less than y")  if( x > y ):  print("Line 4 - x is greater than y")  else:  print("Line 4 - x is not greater than y")  x = 5  y = 20  if( x <= y ):  print("Line 5 - x is either less than or equal to y")  else:  print("Line 5 - x is neither less than nor equal to y")  if( y >= x ):  print("Line 6 - y is either greater than or equal to x")  else:  print("Line 6 - y is neither greater than nor equal to x") |

The above python code is ran it gives the output shown below.



## 7.5 Assignment operators

Python’s most basic assignment operator is ‘=’ which assigns a reference to the value on the right hand of the operator to the variable name on the left hand side of the operator. Python also has several other assignment operators that perform an arithmetic operation before the assignment is made. The nine different assignment operators in python are listed and described below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operator** | **Description** |
| = | Simple assignment operator, Assigns values from right side operands to left side operand |
| += | Add AND assignment operator, It adds right operand to the left operand and assigns the result to left operand |
| -= | Subtract AND assignment operator, It subtracts right operand from the left operand and assigns the result to left operand |
| \*= | Multiply AND assignment operator, It multiplies right operand with the left operand and assigns the result to left operand |
| /= | Divide AND assignment operator, It divides left operand with the right operand and assigns the result to left operand |
| %= | Modulus AND assignment operator, It takes modulus using two operands and assigns the result to left operand |
| \*\*= | Exponent AND assignment operator, Performs exponential (power) calculation on operators and assigns value to the left operand |
| //= | Floor Division and assigns a value, Performs floor division on operators and assigns value to the left operand |

Example code is is give below that explains the working of the different assignment operators in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25 | #======================================  # Assignments  #======================================  x = 10  y = 5  z = 0  #======================================  # Using assignment operators  #======================================  z = x + y  print("Line 1 - Value of z is ", z)  z += x  print("Line 2 - Value of z is ", z)  z \*= x  print("Line 3 - Value of z is ", z)  z /= x  print("Line 4 - Value of z is ", z)  z = 2  z %= x  print("Line 5 - Value of z is ", z)  z \*\*= x  print("Line 6 - Value of z is ", z)  z //= x  print("Line 7 - Value of z is ", z) |

The above code gives the below output when executed.



## 7.6 Bitwise operators

Python’s bitwise operators are applied to the binary form of the values that python’s numeric data types can hold.

Bitwise operators are performed bit by bit. For example when a bitwise operation is performed on “x = 10” and “y = 20”, the binary equivalent of of the integer objects 10 and 20 are used instead of the decimal values(10, 20 ) that were assigned to ‘x’ and ‘y’, so the operands to the bitwise operation are the binary values “1010”(10) and “10100”(20). Operation is performed bit by bit.

X = 63 (base - 10) = 0011 1100 (base - 2)

Y = 13 (base - 10) = 0000 1101 (base - 2)

X & y = 0000 1100

X & y = 0011 1101

X & y = 0011 0001

The six bitwise operators that python supports are listed and briefly described in the below table.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operator** | **Description** |
| & | Binary AND Operator copies a bit to the result if it exists in both operands. |
| | | Binary OR Operator copies a bit if it exists in either operand. |
| ^ | Binary XOR Operator copies the bit if it is set in one operand but not both. |
| ~ | Binary Ones Complement Operator is unary and has the effect of 'flipping' bits. |
| << | Binary Left Shift Operator. The left operands value is moved left by the number of bits specified by the right operand. |
| >> | Binary Right Shift Operator. The left operands value is moved right by the number of bits specified by the right operand. |

The following example code makes use of each of bitwise operations that python supports.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31 | #======================================  # Assignments  #======================================  #-----In Decimal------In Binary--------  #--------------------------------------  x = 60 # 0011 1100  y = 13 # 0000 1101  z = 0 # 0000 0000  #======================================  # Using bitwise operators  #======================================  z = x & y # 12 = 0000 1100  print("Line 1 - value of z is ", z)  z = x | y # 61 = 0011 1101  print("Line 2 - value of z is ", z)  z = x ^ y # 49 = 0011 0001  print("Line 3 - value of z is ", z)  z = ~x #-61 = 1100 0011  print("Line 4 - value of z is ", z)  z = x << 2 #240 = 1111 0000  print("Line 5 - value of z is ", z)  z = x >> 2 # 15 = 0000 1111  print("Line 6 - value of z is ", z) |

When the above python script is executed it displays the following output.



## 7.7 Logical operators

The logical operators and, or and not are supported by python these logical operators are described below. Unlike languages like c, logical operators are written in plain in English.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operators** | **Description** |
| and | Called logical AND operator. If both the operands are true, then the condition becomes true. |
| or | Called logical OR Operator. If any of the two operands are non zero, then the condition becomes true. |
| not | Called logical NOT Operator. Used to reverse the logical state of its operand. If a condition is true, then Logical NOT operator will make it false. |

Any non zero numerical value is considered true and the numerical value zero( 0 ) is considered false. The example coed below works with python’s logical operators.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  181920  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35 | #====================================================================  # Assignments  #====================================================================  x = 5  y = 10  #====================================================================  # Using logical operators  #====================================================================  if( x and y ):  print("Line 1 - x and y are true")  else:  print("Line 1 - Either x is not true or y is not true")  if( x or y ):  print("Line 2 - Either x is true or y is true or both are true")  else:  print("Line 2 - Neither x is true nor y is true")  x = 0  if( x and y ):  print("Line 3 - x and y are true")  else:  print("Line 3 - Either x is not true or y is not true")  if( x or y ):  print("Line 4 - Either x is true or y is true or both are true")  else:  print("Line 4 - Neither x is true nor y is true")  if not( x and y ):  print("Line 5 - Either x is not true or y is not true")  else:  print("Line 5 - x and y are true") |

The output when the above code is executed is provided below.



## 7.8 Membership operators

Python’s two membership operators enable testing whether a given element exists in a sequence(lists, tuples or strings). The two membership operators that python support are listed and described in the table below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operators** | **Description** |
| in | Evaluates to true if it finds a variable in the specified sequence and false otherwise. |
| not in | Evaluates to true if it does not finds a variable in the specified sequence and false otherwise. |

The example code below may give a better understanding on what the python membership operators do.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26 | #====================================================================  # Assignments  #====================================================================  x = 6  y = 7  li = [1, 2, 3, 4, 5 ];  #====================================================================  # Using membership operators  #====================================================================  if ( x in li ):  print("Line 1 - x is available in the given list")  else:  print("Line 1 - x is not available in the given list")  if ( y not in li ):  print("Line 2 - y is not available in the given list")  else:  print("Line 2 - y is available in the given list")  x = 4  if ( x in li ):  print("Line 3 - x is available in the given list")  else:  print("Line 3 - x is not available in the given list") |

The above code gives the below output.



## 7.9 Identity operators

Python’s identity operators can be used to check whether two names points to/references the same object in memory. There are two identity operators supported by python, they are described in the following table.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operators** | **Description** |
| is | Evaluates to true if the variables on either side of the operator point to the same object and false otherwise. |
| is not | Evaluates to false if the variables on either side of the operator point to the same object and true otherwise. |

The code below demonstrates the use of identity operators in python. When you try this out in your python shell you can see how the python interpreter assigns objects to variables.

The id( ) method takes a variable as parameter and returns the identity of the object that name references. An identity of an object is constant and is retained by the object as long as it is alive. The output of the of the above code is given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  262728 | #===============================================================  # Assignments  #===============================================================  x = 10  y = 10  #===============================================================  # Using identity operators  #===============================================================  if ( x is y ):  print("Line 1 - x and y have same identity")  else:  print("Line 1 - x and y do not have same identity")  if ( id(x) == id(y) ):  print("Line 2 - x and y have same identity")  else:  print("Line 2 - x and y do not have same identity")  x = 30  if ( x is y ):  print("Line 3 - x and y have same identity")  else:  print("Line 3 - x and y do not have same identity")  if ( x is not y ):  print("Line 4 - x and y do not have same identity")  else:  print("Line 4 - x and y have same identity") |



## 7.10 Precedence and associativity of python operators

It’s already been discussed that an expression in python and most other programming languages are a combination of values, variables, function calls and operators. Lets take some instances of simple expressions in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | # Assignments  var1 = 10  var2 = 20  var3 = "Ipython"  # Expressions with a single or no operator  var1  var2  var1 + var2  var1 % 3  len(var3) \*\* var1  1 + 4.67 |

Remember a valid expression always returns a value and an expression can not be used until its evaluated. In the above code every expression has either one or no operator so evaluation is very straight forward but in the cases where multiple operators are involved in the expression what is the order of evaluation to be followed? Valid expressions of this case are given in the code below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | # Assignments  var1 = 10  var2 = 20  var3 = "Ipython"  # Expressions with multiple operators  var1 + var2 \*\* (2 % 7) // var1  var1 % 3 \*\* (var1 + var2)  len(var3) \*\* var1 % 100000  1 + 4.67 \* 5 + (len(var3) \* id(var2)) |

Python specifies the order of precedence of operators and associativity( in the case that there are more than one operator with the same precedence level). For example example multiplication has a higher order than subtraction.



But we can change this order of evaluation by using parentheses( ( ) ). parentheses have a higher precedence level.



**Python operator precedence rule (from highest precedence to lowest)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Operator** | **Meaning** |
| () | Parentheses |
| \*\* | Exponent |
| +x, -x, ~x | Unary plus, Unary minus, Bitwise NOT |
| \*, /, %, // | Multiplication, Division, Floor division, Modulus |
| +, - | Addition, Subtraction |
| <<, >> | Bitwise shift operators |
| & | Bitwise AND |
| ^ | Bitwise XOR |
| | | Bitwise OR |
| ==, !=, >, >=, <, <=, in, not in, is, is not, | Comparisons, Identity, Membership operators |
| not | Logical NOT |
| and | Logical AND |
| or | Logical OR |

**Python operator associativity**

In the above table there are certain precedence levels that have multiple operators, this means that all those operators have the same level of precedence. When there are multiple operators of the same precedence in an expression the appropriate associativity rule is followed. For almost all of pythons operators the associativity rule is left to right. Take a look at the example below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | # Left to right associativity  # Output: 3  print(5 \* 2 // 3) # \*, // have equal precedence  # so follow it's associativity rule  # Shows left to right associativity  # Output: 0  print(5 \* (12 // 3) % 2) # parentheses has the highest precedence  # \*, //, % have equal precedence  # so follow it's associativity rule |

The exponent operator( \*\* ) has right to left associativity in python, so if there are multiple exponent operators they are evaluated from right to left after operators of higher precedence have already been evaluated.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | #==============================================================  # Right to left associativity of the \*\* operator  #==============================================================  # Output: 512  print(2 \*\* 3 \*\* 2)  # Output: 64  print((2 \*\* 3) \*\* 2) # Parentheses has the highest precedence |

**Non associative operators(Assignment and comparison operators)**

There are some python operators that do not follow any associativity rule, the assignment and comparison operators. There are some special rules followed when multiple operators of this type are used in a sequence.

Comparison operators:

Take a conditional expression “x < y < z” this expression is not equivalent to “(X < y) < z” or “X < (y < z)”, but instead is equivalent to “X < y and y < z” and this is evaluated from left to right.

Assignment operators:

Assignments of the form “x = y = z” are valid and are evaluated from right to left, but assignments of the form “x = y += z” are not considered to be a valid syntax.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | # Initializing x, y, z  x = 1  y = 2  z = 3  # The below assignment  # expression is invalid  # (Non-associative operators)  # SyntaxError: invalid syntax  x = y += 2 |

So when the python interpreter encounters such syntax it raises a syntax error.



## 7.11 Exercises

1. Is the literal 4 a valid Python expression?

2. Is the variable x a valid Python expression?

3. Is x + 4 a valid Python expression?

4. What affect does the unary + operator have when applied to a numeric expression?

5. Sort the following binary operators in order of high to low precedence: +, -, \*, //, /, %, =.

6. Given the following assignment:

**x = 2**

Indicate what each of the following Python statements would print.

(a) print("x")

(b) print(’x’)

(c) print(x)

(d) print("x + 1")

(e) print(’x’ + 1)

(f) print(x + 1)

7. Given the following assignments:

**i1 = 2**

**i2 = 5**

**i3 = -3**

**d1 = 2.0**

**d2 = 5.0**

**d3 = -0.5;**

Evaluate each of the following Python expressions.

(a) i1 + i2

(b) i1 / i2

(c) i1 // i2

(d) i2 / i1

(e) i2 // i1

(f) i1 \* i3

(g) d1 + d2

(h) d1 / d2

(i) d2 / d1

(j) d3 \* d1

(k) d1 + i2

(l) i1 / d2

(m) d2 / i1

(n) i2 / d1

(o) i1/i2\*d1

(p) d1\*i1/i2

(q) d1/d2\*i1

(r) i1\*d1/d2

(s) i2/i1\*d1

(t) d1\*i2/i1

(u) d2/d1\*i1

(v) i1\*d2/d1

8. What is printed by the following statement:

#print(5/3)

9. Given the following assignments:

**i1 = 2**

**i2 = 5**

**i3 = -3**

**d1 = 2.0**

**d2 = 5.0**

**d3 = -0.5**

Evaluate each of the following Python expressions.

(a) i1 + (i2 \* i3)

(b) i1 \* (i2 + i3)

(c) i1 / (i2 + i3)

(d) i1 // (i2 + i3)

(e) i1 / i2 + i3

(f) i1 // i2 + i3

(g) 3 + 4 + 5 / 3

(h) 3 + 4 + 5 // 3

(i) (3 + 4 + 5) / 3

(j) (3 + 4 + 5) // 3

(k) d1 + (d2 \* d3)

(l) d1 + d2 \* d3

(m) d1 / d2 - d3

(n) d1 / (d2 - d3)

(o) d1 + d2 + d3 / 3

(p) (d1 + d2 + d3) / 3

(q) d1 + d2 + (d3 / 3)

(r) 3 \* (d1 + d2) \* (d1 - d3)

10. What symbol signifies the beginning of a comment in Python?

11. How do Python comments end?

12. Which is better, too many comments or too few comments?

13. What is the purpose of comments?

14. Why is human readability such an important consideration?

15. Consider the following program which contains some errors. You may assume that the comments within the program accurately describe the program’s intended behavior.

**# Get two numbers from the user**

**n1, n2 = eval(input()) # 1**

**# Compute sum of the two numbers**

**print(n1 + n2) # 2**

**# Compute average of the two numbers**

**print(n1+n2/2) # 3**

**# Assign some variables**

**d1 = d2 = 0 # 4**

**# Compute a quotient**

**print(n1/d1) # 5**

**# Compute a product**

**n1\*n2 = d1 # 6**

**# Print result**

**print(d1) # 7**

For each line listed in the comments, indicate whether or not an interpreter error,run-time exception, or logic error is present. Not all lines contain an error.

16. Write the shortest way to express each of the following statements.

(a) x = x + 1

(b) x = x / 2

(c) x = x - 1

(d) x = x + y

(e) x = x - (y + 7)

(f) x = 2\*x

(g) number\_of\_closed\_cases = number\_of\_closed\_cases + 2\*ncc

17. What is printed by the following code fragment?

**x1 = 2**

**x2 = 2**

**x1 += 1**

**x2 -= 1**

**print(x1)**

**print(x2)**

Why does the output appear as it does?

18. Consider the following program that attempts to compute the circumference of a circle given the radius entered by the user. Given a circle’s radius, r, the circle’s circumference, C is given by the formula:

C = 2pr

**r = 0**

**PI = 3.14159**

**# Formula for the area of a circle given its radius**

**C = 2\*PI\*r**

**# Get the radius from the user**

**r = eval(input("Please enter the circle's radius: ")**

**# Print the circumference**

**print("Circumference is", C)**

(a) The program does not produce the intended result. Why?

(b) How can it be repaired so that it works correctly?

19. Write a Python program that ...

20. Write a Python program that ...

# 8.Pythons flow control tools

Most the code examples that were discussed prior to this chapter followed a sequential execution of statements, from start to finish(from line 1 to that last line of code) except some examples that had to involve the “if” and “if-else”for the purpose of explanation of the content being discussed. We’ll now go through each of the tools that that python offers to change the normal sequential flow of control that python programs follow.

These control flow statements can also be referred to as “branching statements”. There are two types of branching statements in python “conditional branching” and “unconditional branching”. conditional branching statements change the control flow of programs based on the result of conditional expression, unconditional branching statements change the control flow of the program when they are encountered and regardless of any condition. Unconditional branching instructions are almost always used along with conditional branching statements.

The sequential control of a python program is shown below in the flow diagram.



The following flowchart portrays the general decision making structure in almost all programming languages.



In python the numerical value “0” and “null” are considered to be “false” any value that is not “0” or “null” are considered to be “true”. The types of decision making statements in python are listed and briefly described below, we’ll go into details in the coming sections.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Statement** | **Description** |
| if statements | An if statement consists of a conditional expression followed by one or more statements. |
| if-else statements | An if statement can be followed by an optional else statement, which executes when the conditional expression is false. |
| nested if statements | You can use one if or else if statement inside another if or else if statement(s). |

Decision making is needed in cased where a block of code should be executed only when certain condition is true, for these kind of cases that require decision making we can use “if..elif..else” statements.

## if statements

The “if statement” has a conditional expression, when the result of the conditional expression is true the body of the “if statement” is executed, in the case that it is false body of the “if statement” is skipped. The general syntax of the if statement is given below.

if <Boolean Expression> :

<if block Statement(s)>

In python the body of the “if statement” is specified by indentation. The body starts with an indentation and the first line without the indentation marks the end and is outside the body of the “if block”. The flowchart of pythons “if statement” is shown below.



The below example code demonstrates how the “if statement” works in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16 | #===============================================================  # Demonstrating the if statement.  # If the number is positive, then print the appropriate message.  #===============================================================  num = 3  if num > 0: # if statements condition  print(num, "is a positive number.") # indentation marks the if block  print("still in if block") # indentation marks the if block  print("outside the if block.") # outside the if block  num = -1  if num > 0: # if statements condition  print(num, "is a positive number.") # indentation marks the if block  print("outside the if block.") # outside the if block |

The body of the “if statement” is executed when the condition “num > 0” is evaluated to be true. If the condition is evaluated to be “true” the body of the “if statement”(marked by the indentation) gets executed, else it is skipped. In the above example code the condition of the first “if statement” is true so it’s body is executed and the condition of the second “if statement” is false so it’s body is skipped. The output when the above program is executed is given below.



## if-else statements

The “if-else statement” has a conditional expression, when the result of the conditional expression is true the body of the “if” is executed, in the case that it is false body of the “else” is executed. The general syntax of the if-else statement is given below.

if <Boolean Expression>:

<if block Statement(s)>

else:

<else block Statement(s)>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| if-else block | In the given flow chart of the flow chart of the “if-else statement” we can see that when the Boolean expression is evaluated to be false the the body of the else block is executed instead. |

The example code below shows an instance of using the “if-else statement”, take a look for more clarity.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15 | #===============================================================  # Demonstrating the if..elif..else Decision chain.  # Print the appropriate message for the different values of num  #===============================================================  num = 3  # try these two variations your self  # num = -12  # num = 0  if num >= 0:  print("num is either Positive or Zero")  else:  print("num is a Negative number") |

The output of the above program is given below, and try the above two variations program yourself.



In the above program the condition of the “if statement”(num > 0) is true so the “if block” is executed and the “else” block code is skipped. If the value of num is changed to “0” the condition is still evaluated to be true so again the “if” block is executed instead. If the value of num is changed to “-12” the “else” block is executed instead.

## if..elif..else statements

The general syntax of “if..elif..else” is given below. First the Boolean expression of “if” is evaluated, if it is evaluated to be false then the Boolean expression of elif is evaluated, if it is evaluated to be true then the body of that “elif” is executed if it is false then it’s body is skipped and control goes to the next “elif” or “else”. It is allowed to have more than one “elif” in the “if..elif..else” chain.

if <Boolean Expression>:

<if block Statement(s)>

elif <Boolean Expression>:

<elif block Statement(s)>

else:

<else block Statement(s)>

The flowchart of the if..elif..else chain is shown below. Remember there can be more than one “elif” in the “if..elif..else” chain.



Lets take a look at a code example to better understand how the if..elif..else decision chain works in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17 | #===============================================================  # Demonstrating the if..elif..else decision chain.  # Print the appropriate message for the different values of num  #===============================================================  num = 34  # Try these two variations yourself  # num = 0  # num = -205  if num >= 0:  print("You've entered a positive number!")  elif num == 0:  print("You've entered zero!")  else:  print("You've entered a negative number!") |

In the above program if “num” is positive then “positive number”Since the Boolean expression of “if” evaluates to be true, the if block code is executed, after execution the control goes out of the current “if..elif.else” decision chain. Try the above two variations yourself. The output of the above program is given below.



Python permits nesting any number “if..elif..else” chains within “if..elif..else” decision chains. The only way to differentiate one chain from the other is by the indentation and so in very complex cases gets confusing to read, This is better avoided to maintain the readability of the program. Lets take a look at a code example that uses “nested if statements”.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16 | #===================================================================  # Demonstrating the nested if statements.  # Print the appropriate message for the different values of num  #===================================================================  num = int(input("Enter a number: ")) # Input from the user  # convert it to the type int  if num >= 0:  if num == 0:  print("You've entered zero!")  else:  print("You've entered a positive number!")  else:  print("You've entered a negative number!") |

The output of the above program for each possible case is given below. In the above python code the input function waits for the user to enter a value in the python shell and returns this value as a string. In this program it is expected that the user enters a numerical value, this value entered by the user is returned by the input function as a string which is converted into an int type using the int( ) method.



There are some statements in python that allow iterating the execution over a certain part of the code until some condition is met, these types of statements are called looping statements. Python provides two looping statements

* for loop
* while loop

## Pythons for loop

For loops in are very handy they are used iterate over all the elements of a sequence typed object(lists, tuples, strings) or an object that is iterated through. They are similar to the “foreach statement” which is available in languages like C#. The body of the for loop is executed once for each element of the container object. The general syntax of pythons for loop is given below.

for <variable> in <iterable typed object>:

<Statements in body of for loop>

Here body of the for loop is identified by indentation. <variable> can be used in the body of the for loop and it holds the value of the element in the sequence typed object for each iteration. The loop continues until the last element in the sequence is reached. The flow chart of the for loop is shown below.



Lets look at a program that uses a “for loop” in it. In the example below a for loop is used to add the elements of a list and print the output. “numbers” is a a hard coded list of integers and variable “sum” is initialized to 0. In every iteration the current element of the sequence of that iteration is added to the variable “sum”.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  1213  14  15  1617  18 | #===============================================================  # Program to find the sum of all numbers in a list  #===============================================================  # List of integers  numlist = [10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90]  # variable to store the sum of elements  sum = 0  # iterate over the list  for num in numlist:  sum = sum + num  # Output: The sum is 450  print("The sum of all elements is ", sum) |

The output of the above code is given below.



### The range( ) method

Python provides a range method that can be used to generate a list of a sequence of numbers. For example if “range(10)” is called it can generate a list of numbers from 0 to 10.



The number to start from, the number to end at and the step size can be specified in the range function by passing them as parameters as “range(start, stop, step size)”. The step size has a default value of “1” if not specified. The start index defaults to “0” if not specified. The range function can be called in the following ways.

* range(stop)
* range(start, stop)
* range(start, stop, step size)

Here start is the number to start from, stop is the number to stop at(not generated by range function). In python 3.7 the range function returns an object of type “range”, which can be converted to a list using the list( ) method. The following examples can clarify more on the range( ) function.



The range( ) function is being discussed with “for loops” because the range( ) function is mostly used with for loops. Then can be used to generate the sequence of items that the “for loop” iterates over. In the example below the range( ) function is combined with the len( ) is used in a for loop to iterate through a list of items using index.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | #===========================================================================  # iterate through a list using indexing  #===========================================================================  Titans = ['Apple', 'Alphabet', 'Microsoft']  # Iterate through the list using the index  for i in range(len(Titans)):  print(Titans[i]) # Accessing the i-th element of the list Titans |

Here len(Titans) returns “3” which is passed as a parameter to the range( ) function. The range( ) method returns an range object “range(0, 3)” which can be iterated through by the for loop. This range can be used as the index for the “for loop”. The above code generates the below output.



### for / else statement

The “for loop” can have an optional “else” block, which is executed after all the elements in the sequence have been iterated through. In the case that a “break” statement was encountered during the execution of the “for loop” which causes an abrupt exit from the loop the “else” part is ignored and so the else part of the “for loop” is executed if there is no abrupt exit from the loop(if a break statement is not encountered while in the loop). An example that involves the “else” part of the “for loop’ is given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | #===============================================================  # for / else loops example  #===============================================================  temp = list(range(10))  for i in temp:  print(i)  else:  print("Done!") # Executed after all iterations through  # the list are completed. |

The output of the above program is given below.



## Pythons while loop

Pythons provides flow control tool, “while” statement which is similar to the “for” statement. The while loop in python allows looping/iterating over a block of code as long as it’s conditional expression(condition) evaluates to be true. The difference between this loop and the “for loop” is that the for loop iterates over the elements in a sequence, the while loop on the other hand continue looping as long as its condition is true, so the while loop is mostly used in cased where the number of times to loop is unknown. The syntax of the while loop is given below.

while <Boolean expression>:

<while block code>

Here as long as the <boolean expression> is evaluated to be true the <while bloc code> is executed. The step by step execution of the while loop is shown below.

1. The conditional expression is evaluated.
2. Executed the body of the while loop if the conditional expression is evaluated to be true.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until the conditional expression is evaluated to be false.

Remember that any value other than “0” and “null” are considered to be true. The flowchart of the “while loop” is given below.



The conditional expression in the “while loop” usually contains one or many variables that is changed every time in the “while” block. This is important because without this change the “while loop” may end up looping without any end as it’s condition is always true, so its important to have one or more variables in the conditional expression of the “while loop” that approaches the terminating condition. Lets look at an example that uses the “while loop”.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16 | #===========================================================  # This program adds the first "n" natural numbers  #===========================================================  n = int(input("Enter the value of n: "))  # Initialize sum and counter variables  i = 1  sum = 0  while i <= n:  sum = sum + i  i = i + 1 # Update counter    print("The sum is: ", sum) |

The above python script adds the first ‘n’ natural numbers(1, 2, 3, …), where “n” is a user provided input to add until. Here ‘i’ is the counter variable, it’s value is incremented in the body of the loop so the next natural number can be added in the next iteration of the loop. The conditional expression of the while loop returns false when the value of ‘i’ equals “n + 1”, this is when the control leaves the while loop. Some of the possible outputs for the above program are given below.

When “n = 2” the output of the above program is given below.



When “n = 3” the output of the above program is



When “n = 10” the output of the above program is



When “n = 50” the output of the above program is



### while / else statement

The just like the “for loop” the“while loop” can have an optional “else” block, which is executed after all the elements in the sequence have been iterated through. In the case that a “break” statement was encountered during the execution of the “while loop” which causes an abrupt exit from the loop the “else” part is ignored and so the else part of the “while loop” is executed if there is no abrupt exit from the loop.

An example that uses the “else” part of the “while loop’ is given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | #===============================================================  # This program illustrates the else statement with a while loop  #===============================================================  i = 0 # Initializing the counter variable for the while loop  while i < 5:  print(i, ") Inside the loop block")  i = i + 1  else:  print(i, ") Inside the else block") |

In the above python script the conditional expression for the while loop “i < 5” is true until “i = 5” which is when the else block code is executed

The output for the above code example is given below.



### Infinite loops

As we have already seen the “while loops” conditional expression commonly contain one or more “counter variables” that have their value changed on every iteration through the loop this allows the conditional expression to tend towards the terminating condition, which when reached, the control exits from the loop.

In the previously discussed example program for counting first n natural numbers the “while” block has a statement that increments the value of ‘i’, this is very important (and sometimes forgotten) because if missed the loop executes forever with an end, this is called an infinite loop. Try the “counting the first n natural numbers” program yourself without the statement to increment the value of the counter variable.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16 | #===========================================================  # This program adds the first "n" natural numbers  #===========================================================  n = int(input("Enter the value of n: "))  # Initialize sum and counter variables  i = 1  sum = 0  while i <= n:  sum = sum + i  i = i + 1 # Update to the counter variable is skipped    print("The sum is: ", sum) |

When the above program is executed, it print the output given below.



As you can see that after the value of ‘n’ s provided, the sum doesn’t get printed, this is because the control is still in the while loop which is an infinite loop. It’s possible to see that the program is still in execution by checking the “task manager”(ctrl + shift + esc on windows).



Lets take a look at some more examples of infinite loops with while loops.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  1920  21  22  23  24  25  26  2728  2930  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39  40  41 | # -\*- coding: utf-8 -\*-  """  Created on Sat Mar 2 15:41:08 2019  @author: Mohamed Khalid  """  #===============================================================  # Examples of loops that terminate and infinite loops  #===============================================================  # Assignments  var1 = 1  var2 = 2  var3 = 3  #---------------------------------------- Loop is never executed  while (0 + 1 - var1):  print(var1)  var1 += 1  #---------------------------------------------- Terminating loop  while (var1 <= 10):  print(var1)  var1 += 1  #---------------------------------------------- Terminating loop  while (var2 >= -10):  print(var2)  var1 -= 5  #------------------------------------------------- Infinite loop  while (var3 != 10):  print(var3)  var3 += 6  #------------------------------------------------- Infinite loop  while (1):  print(var1) |

## Break and Continue statements

Python provides two statements for abnormal termination of loops, the break and continue statements. Break and continue statements in python are used to change the control flow in a loop. Loop are used to iterate over a certain portion of the code, break statement is used to abruptly exit the loop entirely and continue is used to skip a specific iteration of the loop. Let’s discuss more details about the break and continue statement.

### The break statement

The break statement when encountered terminates the loop that contains it. When the break statement is encountered by the the python interpreter passes the control to the statement immediately after the body of the loop.

In the case of nested loops(loops embedded in other loops) the the break statement when encountered, terminates the loop that it was encountered at. As the break statement changes the control flow regardless of any condition it is an unconditional branching statement. The syntax of the break statement is given below.

break

The general code given below illustrates what the break statement does when it is encountered in a “for loop”.



The general code given below illustrates what the break statement does when it is encountered in a “while loop”.



The flow chart of the break statement is shown below.



Lets look at an example that uses the break statement in a loop. In this python program the loop is abruptly terminated when the a specific letter is found.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13 | #===============================================================  # Print all characters of a string until the first "i" is found  #===============================================================  userString = input("Enter a string : ")  for val in userString:  if val == "i":  print("Loop terminated")  break  print(val)  else:  print("The letter i was not found in your string") |

In the above python script a “for loop” is used to iterate through each character of the the user provided string. On each iteration the current character is checked if it is the letter ‘i’ in the case it is not, then this character is printed, if the character is the letter ‘i’ then the python interpreter encounters the break statement which causes the control to exit the loop and passes the control outside the “for loop”(“else” is not executed)

The output of the above program is given below.



### The continue statement

The continue statement when encountered abruptly terminates the current iteration loop that contains it. When the continue statement is encountered by the the python interpreter passes the control to the statement immediately after the body of the loop.

In the case of nested loops(loops embedded in other loops) the the continue statement when encountered, terminates the current iteration of the loop that it was encountered at. As the continue statement changes the control flow regardless of any condition it is an unconditional branching statement. The syntax of the continue statement is given below

continue

The general code given below illustrates what the continue statement does when it is encountered in a “for loop”.



The general code given below illustrates what the continue statement does when it is encountered in a “while loop”.



The flowchart of the continue statement is shown below.



Lets look at an example that uses the continue statement in a loop. In this python program the an iteration that contains a specific letter is skipped.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | #===============================================================  # Print all characters of a given string except i's  #===============================================================  userString = input("Enter a string : ")  for val in userString:  if val == "i":  print("An \"i\" was skipped here.")  continue  print(val)  else:  print("...Done") |

In the above python script a “for loop” is used to iterate through each character of the the user provided string. On each iteration the current character is checked if it is the letter ‘i’ in the case it is not, then this character is printed, if the character is the letter ‘i’ then the python interpreter encounters the continue statement which causes the control to exit the current iteration of the loop and passes the control to the next iteration of that loop.



## Pythons pass statement

Python provides the pass statement, which basically does not do anything, it is a null statement. It is not completely ignored by the python interpreter like the comments in python are, they simply don’t do anything and are mostly used as place holders.

Nothing happens on the execution of a pass statement, it’s execution results in a no operation(NOP). The syntax of the pass statement in python is given below.

pass

Let’s take a look at an example that shows the use of the pass statement in python. Suppose that there is a loop or a function definition who’s bodies haven’t been implemented yet, python does not allow loops or function definitions to have empty bodies, so instead they can contain a pass statement that serves as a place holder as it is not ignored by the python interpreter nor does it do any operation The example below shows how the pass statement can be used as a place holder in loops.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | #==========================================================  # Using the pass statement as a place holder  #==========================================================  # Variable declaration  mySequence = list(range(10))  for item in mySequence:  pass # pass is acts as a placeholder for  # the functionality to be added later. |

The pass statement can also be used as a placeholder in function definitions as shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | def myFunction():  pass # pass is acts as a placeholder for  # the function definition to be  # added later. |

The pass statement can also be used as a placeholder in class definitions as shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | class myClass:  pass # pass is acts as a placeholder for  # the class definition to be  # added later. |

## Exercises

1. What possible values can a Boolean expression have?

2. Where does the term Boolean originate?

3. What is an integer equivalent to True in Python?

4. What is the integer equivalent to False in Python?

5. Is the value -16 interpreted as True or False?

6. Given the following definitions:

**x, y, z = 3, 5, 7**

evaluate the following Boolean expressions:

(a) x == 3

(b) x < y

(c) x >= y

(d) x <= y

(e) x != y - 2

(f) x < 10

(g) x >= 0 and x < 10

(h) x < 0 and x < 10

(i) x >= 0 and x < 2

(j) x < 0 or x < 10

(k) x > 0 or x < 10

(l) x < 0 or x > 10

7. Given the following definitions:

**b1, b2, b3, b4 = true, false, x == 3, y < 3**

evaluate the following Boolean expressions:

(a) b3

(b) b4

(c) not b1

(d) not b2

(e) not b3

(f) not b4

(g) b1 and b2

(h) b1 or b2

(i) b1 and b3

(j) b1 or b3

(k) b1 and b4

(l) b1 or b4

(m) b2 and b3

(n) b2 or b3

(o) b1 and b2 or b3

(p) b1 or b2 and b3

(q) b1 and b2 and b3

(r) b1 or b2 or b3

(s) not b1 and b2 and b3

(t) not b1 or b2 or b3

(u) not (b1 and b2 and b3)

(v) not (b1 or b2 or b3)

(w) not b1 and not b2 and not b3

(x) not b1 or not b2 or not b3

(y) not (not b1 and not b2 and not b3)

(z) not (not b1 or not b2 or not b3)

8. Express the following Boolean expressions in simpler form; that is, use fewer operators. x is an integer.

(a) not (x == 2)

(b) x < 2 or x == 2

(c) not (x < y)

(d) not (x <= y)

(e) x < 10 and x > 20

(f) x > 10 or x < 20

(g) x != 0

(h) x == 0

9. What is the simplest tautology?

10. What is the simplest contradiction?

11. Write a Python program that requests an integer value from the user. If the value is between 1 and 100 inclusive, print ”OK;” otherwise, do not print anything.

12. Write a Python program that requests an integer value from the user. If the value is between 1 and 100 inclusive, print ”OK;” otherwise, print ”Out of range.”

13. Write a Python program that allows a user to type in an English day of the week (Sunday, Monday, etc.). The program should print the Spanish equivalent, if possible.

14. Consider the following Python code fragment:

**# i, j, and k are numbers**

**if i < j:**

**if j < k:**

**i = j**

**else:**

**j = k**

**else:**

**if j > k:**

**j = i**

**else:**

**i = k**

**print("i =", i, " j =", j, " k =", k)**

What will the code print if the variables i, j, and k have the following values?

(a) i is 3, j is 5, and k is 7

(b) i is 3, j is 7, and k is 5

(c) i is 5, j is 3, and k is 7

(d) i is 5, j is 7, and k is 3

(e) i is 7, j is 3, and k is 5

(f) i is 7, j is 5, and k is 3

15. Consider the following Python program that prints one line of text:

**val = eval(input())**

**if val < 10:**

**if val != 5:**

**print("wow ", end='')**

**else:**

**val += 1**

**else:**

**if val == 17:**

**val += 10**

**else:**

**print("whoa ", end='')**

**print(val)**

What will the program print if the user provides the following input?

(a) 3

(b) 21

(c) 5

(d) 17

(e) -5

16. Write a Python program that requests five integer values from the user. It then prints the maximum and minimum values entered. If the user enters the values 3, 2, 5, 0, and 1, the program would indicate that 5 is the maximum and 0 is the minimum. Your program should handle ties properly; for example, if the user enters 2, 4 2, 3 and 3, the program should report 2 as the minimum and 4 as maximum.

17. Write a Python program that requests five integer values from the user. It then prints one of two things: if any of the values entered are duplicates, it prints "DUPLICATES"; otherwise, it prints "ALL UNIQUE".

18. Write a Python program that ...

19. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**a = 0**

**while a < 100:**

**print('\*', end='')**

**a += 1**

**print()**

20. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**a = 0**

**while a < 100:**

**print('\*', end='')**

**print()**

21. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**a = 0**

**while a > 100:**

**print('\*', end='')**

**a += 1**

**print()**

22. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**a = 0**

**while a < 100:**

**b = 0;**

**while b < 55:**

**print('\*', end='')**

**b += 1**

**print()**

**a += 1**

23. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**a = 0**

**while a < 100:**

**if a % 5 == 0:**

**+= 1**

**print()**

24. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**a = 0**

**while a < 100:**

**b = 0**

**while b < 40:**

**if (a + b) % 2 == 0:**

**print('\*', end='')**

**b += 1**

**print()**

**a += 1**

25. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**a = 0**

**while a < 100:**

**b = 0**

**while b < 100:**

**c = 0**

**while c < 100:**

**print('\*', end='')**

**c++;**

**b += 1**

**a += 1**

**print()**

26. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**for a in range(100):**

**print('\*', end='')**

**print()**

27. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**for a in range(20, 100, 5):**

**print('\*', end='')**

**print()**

28. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**for a in range(100, 0, -2):**

**print('\*', end='')**

**print()**

29. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**for a in range(1, 1):**

**print('\*', end='')**

**print()**

30. How many asterisks does the following code fragment print?

**for a in range(-100, 100):**

**print('\*', end='')**

**print()**

# Functions in python

Function syntax has already been introduced in the previous chapters, we have already worked with some of functions from python s standard library like print(), list(), tuple(), len(), id() and some other functions. The python library has several functions that can be used for common programming tasks.

Functions in mathematics are of the form f(x) = y. Here function ‘f’ when given the input ‘x’ performs operations on ‘x’ and gives ‘y’ as the output. An example of function a definition in mathematics is

f(x) = 3x + 4

From this function definition we can compute the values of f(x) for the different values of ‘x’ as below.

f(3) = 13

f(5) = 19

f(0) = 4

Functions in python is a block of code that is given a name( like the name of above function is ‘f’). This block of code can be called any where in the program, when called control is shifted to the body of the called function. The above function ‘f’ can be written in python as follows.



One example of a function in pythons standard library is the square root function, this function is named sqrt. The square root functions takes numeric as parameter and returns a float value, like square root of “25” is ‘5’.

Functions should be thought of as tools that perform a certain operation, so it’s important to know “what a function does” than “how it does it”. Thinking of functions this way allows the programmer to see functions as a black box that performs the desired operation. In the case of the square root function it allows the programmer to focus on the task at hand rather than focusing on the algorithm to calculate the square root of a number, like for example to make a program that return the square root of a number provided by the user, the sqrt() function can be used to avoid the complex logic of computing the square root of a number. The code example below returns the square root of a number provided by the user by using the sqrt() function instead of implementing the logic for square root calculation.



|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | from math import sqrt  # ask user for input  num = eval(input("Enter number: "))  # Compute the square root with sqrt()  # sqrt() is responsible for square root calculation,  # allowing the programmer to focus on whats important  root = sqrt(num);  # print the result  print("Square root of", num, "=", root) |

Output for the above program is below.



Here sqrt(num) is function invocation or a function call(a call to the sqrt() function). A function provides a service to it’s the the caller(invoker of the service). The above code that we have to compute square root of a number is the “calling code” or the “client code” to the sqrt() function which acts like a service that can be invoked

root = sqrt(num)

The above statement invokes sqrt() passing it the value of num. The expression sqrt(num) the square root of the value of the variable “num”.

Unlike the small collection of functions(like type, str, int, range, id) that are always available in python programs, the sqrt() function is available in the “math” module and can not be used unless the math module is imported, hence the purpose of the “import” statement(the first line of code)

from math import sqrt

The above code imports the sqrt() function from the “math” module. A module is a collection of code that can be imported and used in other python programs. The “math” module is very rich in the functions it provides to perform math operations, it provides functions for trigonometric, logarithmic and several other math operations.

A function has a name followed by a set of parentheses which contain the information that the function needs to perform it’s task.

Sqrt( num ) # sqrt needs a parameter to return the square root of

num is the value that the sqrt() function operates on. The values that are passed to a function are called the parameters or arguments of the function. Functions after they perform the computations it was defined to perform can return a value back to the caller(client invoking it) like in the case of the sqrt() function which returns the square root of the parameter passed as a float type to its invoker. This value that is returned to the client can be used by the client just like any other value.



The print() function above can use the value returned by the sqrt() function.



Like in the above assignment statement, the value returned by a function can be assigned to a name. When the client code attempts to pass an argument to the function it’s invoking that has a type that is different then what is expected by the function, then the interpreter raises an error.



A function can be called any number of times anywhere in the program. Remember to he the client of a function, the function is like a labeled black box, the knows client knows what the function bing called does and is not concerned with how the task is performed. All functions can be treated like black boxes. A service that a function provides can be used without being concerned of the internal details.

The only way a behaviour of a function can be altered is through the functions parameters(the arguments that are passed to a function can be different). When immutable types(int, float, string, tuple) are passed as arguments to a function, a copy of the objects are passed instead of a reference to the original objects, therefore immutable objects when passed to a function as an argument can not be changed by the called function. In the case that the arguments passed are mutable objects a reference to those objects are passed instead of a new copy of those objects, therefore mutable objects when passed to a function as an argument can be changed by the invoked function.

As we already seen before functions can take more than one parameter like the range() function that can take one, two or three parameters.

From the view of the client/caller, a function has three parts. Lets discuss eac of them in brief.

**Name**

A function’s name is the handle that is used to identify the code to be executed when it is invoked. The same rules that apply to variable names apply to function names. Function names, like variable names are also identifiers.

**Parameters**

Functions are called with zero or more parameters. The types of each argument passed in the invocation of a function must be the same as the types of parameters in the function definition. If more are or less parameters are passed than what is expected the interpreter raises an error. Some examples of this these two kinds of errors are illustrated in the shell execution below.





**Return type**

A function always returns a value to it’s caller. The client code should be compatible with the type of the object returned by called function. The return type and the parameter types are not related. Even in the case that the function does not specifically return any value, a special “none” value is return to the client.

There are functions that take no parameter like the random() function. The random() function returns a random floating point value and it belongs to the “random” module. Again if the arguments passed does not match with the number of parameters and the type of each parameter in the function definition then an error is raised by the interpreter. You can see in the below code that if a parameter is passed to the random() function an error is raised.



One of the ways that functions can be categorized is as,

* **Functions without side effects:** These types of functions just perform the required task and return the result to the client caller and that is all it does, it makes no other changes like printing to the display, changing the variables of the caller, etc. This type of functions always return a result(not none) to the invoking client
* **Functions with side effects:** These types of variables perform the required task which may also require to change it’s environment like printing to the display or changing the value of the caller, etc. This type of functions may sometimes return a special value “none” to the invoking client.

## Standard mathematical functions

The “math” module provides almost all of the functionality of a scientific a scientific calculator. Some of he function of the “math” module a re listed below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Function** | **description** |
| sqrt | Computes the square root of a number. |
| exp | Computes e raised a power |
| log | Computes the natural logarithm of a number. |
| log10 | Computes the common logarithm of a number. |
| cos | Computes the cosine of a value specified in radians: cos(x) = cos x; other trigonometric functions include sine, tangent, arc cosine, arc sine, arc tangent, hyperbolic cosine, hyperbolic sine, and hyperbolic tangent |
| pow | Raises one number to a power of another. |
| degrees | Converts a value in radians to degrees. |
| radians | Converts a value in degrees to radians. |
| fabs | Computes the absolute value of a number. |

The parameters passed to the function by the calling client code is called the actual parameters(arguments) and the parameters that are specified in the function definition are the formal parameters. When a function is invoked the first actual parameter is assigned to the first formal parameter, then the second actual parameter is assigned to the second formal parameter, so the assignment of actual parameters to formal parameters happens from left to right. The order of passing the assignment matters, for example calling the pow() function as pow(10,2) returns 100 but calling it as pow(2, 10) returns 1024.

Lets try to solve a trigonometry problem with the functions provided by the math module. The problem is as follows.

Suppose that there is a spacecraft at some distance from a plane. A satellite orbits this planet, the problem is to find how much farther a way the satellite would be away from the spacecraft if the the satellite moves 10 degrees along it’s orbital path. The spacecraft is on the plane of the satellites orbit.



Let the center of the planet be the origin(0, 0) of the coordinate system, this is also the center of the satellites orbit. In this problem the spacecraft is located at the point (px, py), the satellite is initially at point (x1, y1) then moves to point (x2 , y2). Here the the points (x1, y1) and (px, py) are given and the problem is to find the the difference between d1 and d2. This problem can be solved in two steps as follows.

**Step 1**

Calculate the point (x1, y1). For any given point (x1, y1) a rotation of theta degrees gives a new point (x2, y2), where



**Step 2**

The distance d1 between the two points (px, py) and (x1, y1) is given by,



The same way, distance d2 between the two points (px, py) and (x2, y2) is given by,



The python program below solves the orbital distance problem for the spacecraft at location (100, 0) and user provided starting location for the satellite. You can see that the standard math problem was used in the program to com at the solution.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35 | #====================================================================  # Python program for the orbital distance problem  #====================================================================  from math import sqrt, cos, sin, pi  # The orbiting point is (x,y)  # A fixed point is always (100, 0),  # (p\_x, p\_y). Change them as necessary.  p\_x = 100  p\_y = 0  # number of radians in 10 degrees  radians = 10 \* pi/180  # The cosine and sine of 10 degrees  cos10 = cos(radians)  sin10 = sin(radians)  # ask the satellites starting point from the user  x1, y1 = eval(input("Enter the satellites initial coordinates (x1,y1):"))  # calculate the initial distance d1  d1 = sqrt((p\_x - x1)\*\*2 + (p\_y - y1)\*\*2)  # calculate the new location (x2, y2) of the satellite after movement  x2 = x1\*cos10 - y1\*sin10  y2 = x1\*sin10 + y1\*cos10  # Compute the new distance d2  d2 = sqrt((p\_x - x2)\*\*2 + (p\_y - y2)\*\*2)  # Print the difference in the distances  print("Difference in the distances: %.5f" % (d2 - d1)) |

The output when the above program is executed for the starting location (10, 10) is,



## Time functions

Pythons “time” module provides a lot of functions that involve time. In this section we will take a look at two of the functions that are provided by this module the clock() and sleep() functions.

The clock function allows measuring time in seconds and it can be used anywhere in a program allowing the measure of time at any part of a program. The clock function works differently based on the operating system that it is being executed on. On unix like operating systems like linux and mac OS, the clock() function returns the number number of seconds elapsed from the start of the programs execution. On Microsoft windows the clock() function returns the number of seconds elapsed from the previous call to the clock() function. The return the number of seconds elapsed as a floating point number. The difference between the returned values of two clock function calls can be used to find the time period between the two calls.

The below program returns the amount of time it took the user to respond.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | #====================================================================  # This program prints the time it took the user to respond in seconds  #====================================================================  from time import clock # import the clock method  print("User respond! : ")  startTime = clock()  input()  endTime = clock()  print("It took you %f seconds to respond " % (endTime - startTime)) |

An output a very slow user might get is,



Here is a another program that displays the amount of time it took to add the first ten million natural numbers.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16 | #====================================================================  # Time taken to add the first million natural numbers  #====================================================================  from time import clock # import the clock method  sum = 0 # initialize sum as 0  print("started adding")  startTime = clock()  for i in range(10000000):  sum += i  endTime = clock()  print("It took %f seconds " % (endTime - startTime)) |

The output of this program is given below.



The sleep function can be used to suspend a program for a period of time in seconds. The number of seconds to suspend the program for is passed as an argument to the sleep function. The below program counts down to zero from three with one second intervals.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16 | #=====================================================================  # Three second count down timer!  #=====================================================================  from time import sleep # Import the sleep method  timer = int(3) # Initialize the timer to a predefined value  print("Count down starts... %i" %timer)  while timer > 0:  sleep(1)  timer -= 1  print(timer)    sleep(1) |

The proves to be very useful when in comes to controlling the speed in graphical animations. This program when ran produces the following output.



## Random functions

The package random provides some functions that deal with randomness. Applications that require the behaviour of randomness need these kind of functions. Almost all random number generating algorithms produce “pseudo random” numbers which means they are not truly random. pseudo random number generators when repeated long enough produce results that start repeating the exact same sequence of numbers. This not a serious problem as the length of this sequence is long enough to be considered safe for almost all practical applications.

Pythons “random” module consists of a number of functions that enable the use of pseudo random numbers in programs. Few of the commonly used functions of this module are described below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Function** | **Description** |
| random() | Returns a pseudo random floating-point number x in the range 0 <= x < 1 |
| randrange() | Returns a pseudo random integer value within a specified range. |
| seed() | Sets the random number seed. |

The seed() sets the value from which the sequence of the pseudo random numbers are generated. Every time the functions random() and randrange() are called they return the next value in the sequence of pseudo random values. The program below, prints ten random numbers in the range of one to ten.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | from random import randrange, seed  seed(10)  for i in range(10):  print(i+1,")",randrange(1, 10)) |

This program produces the output shown below.



The function seed() sets the “seed number” that is used to generate the pseudo random number sequence and as there is a dependency if the seed value is changed then then sequence of pseudo random random numbers will also change. This dependency is in one way a problem because if the above program is run again it produces the exact same sequence of random numbers. This is illustrated in the example program shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  1819  20 | from random import randrange, seed  seed(10) # The seed is 10  for i in range(3):  print(i + 1, ")", randrange(1, 10))  print("----------")  seed(14) # Change the seed to something else  for i in range(3):  print(i + 1, ")", randrange(1, 10))  print("----------")  seed(3)  for i in range(3):  print(i + 1, ")", randrange(1, 10))  print("----------") |

From this program you can see that the same sequence of pseudo random numbers are generated for the same value of the seed. Having constant value of the seed isn’t a safe way to generate random numbers, but it can be useful while testing a program. When the value of the seed is not specifically mentioned, then the system time determines the seed. This allows the pseudo random numbers generated to have a more random behaviour. The out put of the above program are shown below.



Now lets write a program that simulates the rolling of a six sided die. A die has six sides labeled one to six with one of the sides that can land on top when the die is rolled. We want to user to provide information on the number of dice to be thrown. The random number generated should lie between zero and six, so the randrange(1, 6) will be used for this, and it will be called for each die thrown.Lastly this entire setup should be placed in a loop that continue indefinitely until the user provides the number zero as input.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | from random import randrange  # skipping the seed setup  sides = 7  while 1:  diceCount = int(input("Enter the number of dice to throw :"))  for i in range(diceCount):  dieValue = randrange(1,sides)  print("%i " % (dieValue), end = " " ) |

An output for the above program is given below.



## Why write your own functions

All the programs that we have seen till now where very small and come no where near the size of practical applications. When the programs size increase the complexity of the program increases as well and it starts to get difficult to manage this complexity. Programs like the ones we have gone through are “monolithic code”, the program execution flows from start to finish, the these types of programs are like one big block of code,when the size of a monolithic program grows it’s complexity starts to get out of hand. The solution to this is to divide the code into several almost independent smaller pieces with very specific roles. This division of a programs complexity into smaller pieces can be done using functions. A program can be made up of multiple functions, each one having the task of addressing a part of the problem and when used together solves the problem as a whole.

One big and complex monolithic code is avoided for several reasons.

* **Difficulty writing correctly:** When writing any statement, the details of the entire code must be considered. This becomes unmanageable for programmers beyond a certain point of complexity.
* **Difficulty debugging:** The larger a code block is, the harder it is to find the source of an error or an exception in that block of code. The effect of an erroneous statement might not be know until later in the program a correct statement uses the result of the erroneous statement.
* **Difficulty in modification:** Before a code sequence can be modified to achieve a different result, this code sequence needs to be understood, which becomes a very heavy task as the size of code sequence increases.

Our code can be made more manageable by dividing our code into parts and rewriting these parts of our code as functions, calling them in the program when and as needed. Using this divide and conquer strategy, a complicated code block can now be be broken down into simpler code blocks each being handled by a function. The programmer can now accomplish the same original task by delegating tasks to functions, this way a results in more manageable code blocks that are easy to read, write, debug and modify. Besides these advantages of structuring the code, functions provide several other advantages like reusing same code block for the same kind of task(reusability). Functions that provides similar functionality can be bundled together into reusable parts.

Although it’s time saving to use library functions, it is sometimes necessary to write our own functions for custom behaviour. Fortunately python allows programmers to create their own custom functions and use them.

If the purpose of the custom functions are general enough and written in a proper manner then this function can even be used in other programs. In the following sections we’ll take the first steps in writing functions in python.

## Functions basics

Every python function has

1. **Function definition:** A functions definition describes every detail about that function including how many parameters and what type of parameters it takes, what the function does and also what the function returns.
2. **Function invocation(call):** After a function is defined, it can be called from anywhere in the program by passing the appropriate parameters to the function. A function can have only one definition but it can be invoked any number of times.

A function definition has three parts, they are listed below.

* **Name:** The name of a function is what is used to identify the block of code that this function contains. Function names are also identifiers, so they follow all the rules of python identifiers. One of the best ways to name a function is to give it the name of the task it is designed to do.
* **Parameters:** The parameters that the function accepts from callers is specified in the function definition. They appear with a set of parentheses( ( ) ) in a comma( , ) separated list. The list of parameters can be left empty if the functions definition does not specify parameters to passed, these types of function do not require information from the caller to perform the task it was designed to carry out.
* **Body:** The block of indented statements that follow after the functions header is the functions body. This is what gets executed when the function call is made. If the function is required to produce a result and return it to the client, the return statement can be used to return the result back to the caller.

The syntax of a function definition is given below.

def <function\_name>(<parameter list>):

"""<docstring>"""

<statement(s)>

The above function definition syntax has the following the components.

* def is the keyword that signifies the start of the header of a function
* <function\_name> is the unique name that identifies the the body of the function
* <parameter list> is used to pass arguments to the function. They are optional.
* “:” signifies the end of the function header
* <”””docstring”””> is the documentation string that can be used to describe the purpose and functionality of the function
* <statement(s)> are the valid python statements that make up the body of the function. All the statements in the function body have the same indentation usually four spaces(“ ”) are used.
* A return statement is optional and it is used to return the result back to the caller if any

The example code below illustrates a simple function definition and calling this defined function.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | def greet(name):  """This function prints a hello and doesn't return anything"""  print("Hello " + name)  greet("khalid") |

In the above code example a function “greet” is defined that takes a single string(name) as a parameter and prints a specified string onto the prompt. Then the defined function is immediately called after it’s definition, this executes the body of the greet function with the passed arguments.

### Docstring

The first line after the function header optionally has a string called the “docstring” that is sort for “document string”. The “docstring” is used for explaining what the function does.

If you have already programmed in other languages you would be aware how programmers tend to forget what their code does, so it’s always a best practice to document your code. Even if you may not use the documentation to refresh your memory on what the function does, it can help others who will be working with your code.

The docstring of a function can be accessed with “.\_\_doc\_\_” after a function name. So if the following code is entered into the python shell it returns,



### The return statement

The return statement for functions is like how the break statement is for loops in a way that they both takes the control out of the block they were encountered at. The return statement exits the function, passes the control back to the place it was called from the calling code additionally the return statement contains followed by an expression list that is evaluated and returned back to the caller.

The syntax of the return statement is given below.

return <expression\_list>

Here the expression in the return statement is evaluated and returned back to the client. In the case that there is no expression provided or the return statement itself is skipped then a special object none is returned back to the calling client.

For example try the following code in the python shell. Print the value that is return by the greet function.



In the above call to print, which is passed a call to the greet function as the parameter. First the greet method is called which prints to the prompt then the greet method returns a “none” object back to the print function, the print function then prints the “none” object

Lets take a look at an example that illustrates the return statement. The program below defines and uses a function that returns the absolute value of an number that’s passed to it. You can see how the return evaluates the expression given to it and returns the result as well as the control back to the caller. Remember that an expression is any combination of values, variables, operators, function calls. Expressions always return an object. If there is no return statement in a function the execution of the function ends when the last statement of the functions code block has been executed and the “none” object as well as the control is returned back to the caller.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  1516 | #==============================================================  # Evaluate absolute value of a number  #==============================================================  def absolute\_value(num):  """This function returns the absolute  value of the number passed as an argument"""  if num >= 0:  return num  else:  return (-num)  userInput = eval(input("Enter a number: ")) # evaluate users input  print("It's absolute value is " + str(absolute\_value(userInput))) |

The output for the above program for the value “-56” is shown below.



### Flow of control at function call and return

The below figure illustrates the control flow when a function call is made and when the the execution of the functions code block completes.



When a function call is made the control shifts to the body of the called function, the only two ways that control can exit from a function is by the return statement or by executing the last statement in the body of the function.

### The scope and lifetime of variables

Scope of a variable in a program is the part of the program that can recognize and use the object referred to by that variable. Parameters of a function are considered to be local to that function(local variables) and so they are in the scope of that functions code block but outside the scope of the rest of the program. A functions local variables can’t be used by the parts of the program outside that functions code block hence they have local scope.

Lifetime of a variable is the period through which the variable exists in the memory. The lifetime of variables inside functions(i.e local variables) is as long as the function executes. After the function completes it’s execution all it’s variables are deleted and their associated objects are garbage collected, and because of this functions don’t have any memory between two function calls, they don’t know what the value of local variable was in the previous call.

The example code below illustrates the scope of a variable inside a function.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14 | #==========================================================================  # This program illustrates the scope of a variable inside a function  #==========================================================================  def printLocalx():  x = 10 # Local variable, scope lines 2 - 4  print("This is printLocalx() function's value of x: ", x)  print("This is printLocalx() function's value of y: ", y)  # Local variable x is deleted once the control flow reaches this point  x = 20 # Global variable, scope lines 1 - 13  y = 40 # Global variable, scope lines 1 - 13  printLocalx()  print("Value outside the function:", x) |

The above program produces the below output when executed. Observe that even though the the global variable x is in the scope of printLocalx() function, the function prefers the value of it’s local variable when there is a match.



Even though function printLocalx() changes the value of the the variable x, it does not affect the global variable x. This is because variable x inside the printLocalx() function is different from the one outside of it, so remember that they are two different variables with different scopes.

In Python the global keyword allows modification variables that are outside the current scope. The can be used to create global variables and modify it in the local context.

**Things to remember when using the global keyword.**

1. A variable is by default a local to a function when it is declared inside the function
2. A variable is by default a global variable when its declared outside a function. It makes no difference using the global keyword on variables defined outside functions.
3. The global keyword can be used inside functions to read and write global variables inside functions.

Lets take a look at some examples that illustrate the use and working of the global keyword.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | x = 20 # x is a global variable  def printx():  print(x) # Since there is no local variable x, the global variable x  # can be accessed  printx() |

This example code produces the below output.



Here, notice that as the function printx() doesn’t have a local variable ‘x’, it can read the value of the global variable ‘x’, but the interpreter raises an error when we try to write to the same variable.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | x = 20 # x is a global variable  def printx():  x = x + 4 # Try using the value of a global variable.  # Local variable x is referenced before  # it's assignment  print(x)  printx() |

When the above program is ran it raises the error below,because the value of a global variable is being modified in the function.without using the global keyword it is only possible to read the value of a global variable inside a function



The global keyword can be used to overcome this kind of a problem where the modifications to global variables from within a function is required. The example below shows how a global keyword can be used to modify a global variable from within a function. To modify a global variable from inside a function this variable has to first to be declared as global inside the function it needs to be used in. This is illustrated in the example below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | x = 20 # x is a global variable  def printx():  global x # Now the global variable x can be modified  x = x + 4 # Try using the value of the global variable.  # you'll see there is no error raised this time  print("This is the value of x inside function printx(): %i" %x)  printx()  print("This is the value of x outside function printx(): %i" %x) |

The output of the above program is given below. notice that the value of the variable ‘x’ is the same inside and outside the printx() function. This is because variable ‘x’ inside the printx() function now refers to the same object as the variable ‘x’ outside this function.



More on the global and local scopes will be discussed in the following sections.

### Arguments

Functions may take any number of parameters(No upper or lower bound) to perform the task that it was designed for. Before calling a user defined function, this function must be defined and it’s function definition must specify the parameters it needs. When a function is called by a client code, the client caller must provide the same number of arguments as specified in the function definition. if there is any mismatch in the number of arguments passed then what was expected then the python interpreter raises an error. The examples below executed in the python shell show the errors raised when there are issues with the arguments passed to a function call





Observe that the number of arguments to pass are compulsory but the types of the arguments are not. Although passing an argument of a different type than what is expected would most likely end up raising an error.

Python also allows it’s users to define functions that take a variable number of parameters. Functions that take a variable number of parameters can be defined with the following types of arguments. We’ll discuss each of them in the following section.

1. Default arguments
2. Keyword arguments
3. Arbitrary arguments

**Default and non-default arguments**

Python allows to assign default values for function parameters A default value for a parameter can be given with the “=” operator. When a parameter is assigned a default value, its argument can be skipped in the function call in which case the default value provided in the function definition gets assigned instead. In the example below we create our own range function that in turn calls python’s standard range function. This example illustrates python’s default arguments.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | def My\_range\_func(stop, start = 0, step = 1):  """  This function in turn calls  the standard range function  and returns it's result as  a list  """    li = list(range(start, stop, step))  return li |

Now when this program is executed, try making calls to this function with different parameters from the python shell. Observe that the function call can be made with one, two or three parameters, this is because the second and third arguments are default arguments are default arguments and when their values are not provided they assume their default values. Here it is necessary to pass a value for parameter stop and failing to do so would raise an error. For illustration there are some function calls to the My\_range\_func() given below. These function calls where made from the python shell.



Here the parameter start does not have a default value and is mandatory to provide in a call. Default values 0 and 1 are provided for parameters start and step and so they’re value can be skipped in a function call but if provided they overwrite the default values. Any number of parameters in a function can have a default value but it must be made sure that all default values are pushed to the right of the parameter list. This is needed as without it there would be difficulty differentiating between default and compulsory arguments in a function call. To ensure this the python interpreter raises an error when it encounters a function header that doesnt have all default parameters pushed to the right. An example is given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | def My\_range\_func( start = 0, stop, step = 1): # This raises an error |



**Keyword and positional arguments**

When a function is called by passing arguments to it, the arguments are assigned to the parameters based on it’s position in the argument list which is from left to right. For instance in the above function My\_range\_func() when (20, -3, 2) is passed as the argument list, the assignment occurs in the following order.

1. 20 gets assigned to variable stop
2. -3 gets assigned to variable start
3. 2 gets assigned to variable step

These arguments are positional arguments as the position of the arguments matter in the function call. Python allows re-ordering of the arguments that are passed if the arguments are passed as keyword arguments. When function call is made with keyword arguments the arguments can be passed in any order. The general syntax of argument list when passing arguments as keyword arguments is given below.

<function\_name>(<ParamterA> = <value>, <ParameterB> = <value>,...)

The following are calls to the previously defined My\_range\_func() function and they are all valid.



A function call can be made with a mixture of positional and keyword arguments but in this case the keyword arguments must be pushed to the right side of the argument list which means there should not be any positional arguments that follow keyword arguments in the argument list of a function call. The example below show a valid and invalid instance of making function calls with combination of both positional and keyword arguments.



**Arbitrary arguments**

There are many cases where the number of arguments that will be passed during a function call is unknown. An example of this case is a function that simply prints every argument it receives,but the number of arguments it is passed is arbitrary. An arbitrary parameter can be specified in the function definition by adding a ‘\*’ before the parameter which says that this parameter is a tuple, this tuple will contain the arbitrary number of arguments that will be passed. Lets take a look at an example that illustrates arbitrary arguments in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | def sayHiTo(\*people):  """This function says hi  to everyone in the people tuple."""  # names is a tuple that contains all the arguments  for person in people:  print("Hi " + person + "!")  sayHiTo("khalid", "guido von rossum") |

The above program defines a function that takes an arbitrary number of arguments that is available to the function through the “people” tuple. “people” tuple is a tuple that consists of all the arbitrary arguments that are passed to the function when it’s called. “Hi <person name>!” is printed for each element of the “people” tuple. The output of the above program is given below.



### Recursive functions

We already know that functions in python can call other functions, which means there also can be a case where a function calls itself. These kind of functions are called as “recursive functions” as they are defined in terms of themselves. A very common example that is used to explain recursive functions is the factorial program(program that returns the factorial of a given number). The factorial of a number is the product of all integers from one to itself

For example factorial of five represented as “5!” is equal to “1 \* 2 \* 3 \* 4 \* 5”. Lets take a look at an example that defines a recursive function to return the factorial of a given number.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  1819  20 | #========================================================  # Python program to calculates the factorial of a number  #========================================================  def factorial(x):  """This is a recursive function  that calculates the factorial of  an integer"""  if x == 1: # recursive calls terminates when this condition is met  return 1  else:  return (x \* factorial(x-1)) # The function calls itself  while 1:  num = eval(input("Enter an number: "))  if num == -1:  break  print("The factorial of", num, "is", factorial(num)) |

In this example the factorial() function is recursive as it makes a call to itself in the function body. Whenever the factorial function is called, it recursively calls itself decrementing the number passed as an argument each time until the terminating condition is met that is “x == 1” The results are continually evaluated from the last call to the first and the result of each function call is returned to it’s client caller until the initial call is reached. The a possible output of the above program is given below.



The following illustration shows the method of evaluation when the factorial() function is called with 5 passed as the argument.

factorial(4) # initial call with 4

4 \* factorial(3) # second call with 3

4 \* 3 \* factorial(2) # third call with 2

4 \* 3 \* 2 \* factorial(1) # fourth call with 1

4 \* 3 \* 2 \* 1 # fourth call returns 1

4 \* 3 \* 2 # third call returns 2 \* 1 = 2

4 \* 6 # second call returns 3 \* 2 = 6

24 # return from initial call 4 \* 6 = 24

# 24 is the value returned by factorial(4)

Recursive function calls can be easily understood in terms of pushing and popping elements from a stack, where each call to a recursive function is pushed to the top of the stack. After the last insertion to the stack has been made the elements of the stack are popped one by one till all the elements have been popped. Before popping an element at the top of the stack the function is evaluated and the if there is a any value returned by that function it is returned to it’s caller in the next top of the stack. This order of evaluation continues till there are no more elements in the stack and the if any value is returned by the last element of the stack it is returned to the initial caller of the recursive function. Lets try to visualize this with the function call factorial(3).







**Advantages of Recursion:**

* The use of recursive functions make the code more elegant and readable.
* Recursive functions can be used to break a complex problem down to simpler problems of a repetitive kind.
* Generating a sequence is easier using recursion than using nested iteration.

**Disadvantages of Recursion:**

* Sometimes the logic of recursive code can be hard to follow or understand.
* Recursive calls take up more memory than it’s iterative version.
* Harder to debug

### Lambda functions

In this section we’ll take a look at what lambda functions are in python and some examples using lambda functions.

Python allows creating functions without a name called lambda functions. Like normal functions are defined using the def keyword lambda functions are defined using the lambda keyword. Lambda functions are also called as “anonymous functions”. The syntax of lambda functions in python are given below.

Lambda <arguments>: <Expression>

Lambda functions are allowed to have any number of arguments but can have only one expression as it’s body. When a lambda function is called the expression is evaluated and returned. Lambda functions are used whenever function objects are needed. Let’s take a look at an example that defines and uses a lambda function.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | # Program that defines and uses a lambda function that  # returns the cube of number  cube = lambda a: a \* a \* a # Defining the lambda function  num = eval(input("Enter a number: "))  print(cube(num)) # Using the lambda function |

In the above code lambda a: a \* a \* a where “a” is the argument and “a \* a \* a” is the expression that is evaluated and returned. This lambda function has no name that’s why its called an anonymous function. The identifier cube returns the function object that is assigned to it, so it can be called a normal function.

The statement

cube = lambda a: a \* a \* a

Has the same meaning as the below function definition

def cube(a):

return a \* a \* a

Lambda functions are usually used when a nameless function is needed for a short time. They are generally used as an argument to functions that take other functions as parameters(higher order functions). Lets go through two examples that show the practical use of lambda functions in python.

**Using lambda functions in the filter() function**

The filter() function in python takes a function and a list for parameters. The provided function is called for all the elements of the provided list and a new list is returned with all the elements that returned true when passed to the provided function.

The example below shows the calls the “filter” function to filters out all the zero’s from the provided list and returns a new list object with only non zero elements in the provided list.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | #==========================================================  # Program to filter out zero's from a list  #==========================================================  my\_list = [10, 0, 7, 76, 0, 0, 39, 87]  li = list(filter(lambda a: a != 0 , my\_list))  print(li) |

The above program prints the output given below when executed.



**Using lambda functions in the map() function**

pythons map() function takes in a function object and a list object as it’s arguments and returns the a list object containing all the values returned by the provided function when it’s called on every element in the provided list.

The example code below makes a call to the map() function to return the square of all the elements in the provided list.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | #==========================================================  # Program to square all the elements of a given list  #==========================================================  my\_list = [1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128]  li = list(map(lambda x: x \* x, my\_list))  print(li) |

The output of this program is shown below.



### Global, local and non local variables

Lifetime and scope of variables has already been introduces in the previous chapters, now let’s take a look at global, local and non local variables in detail.

**Global variables**

The parts of a python program that exists at the surface level i.e outside of any internal code blocks like “if block”, “while block”, “function definitions”, etc are said to be the global scope and any variables that are created at that level are called global variables. Variables declared in the global scope can be accessed from any part of the program as long as they are alive. In this example, ‘x’ is declared in the global scope so it’s a global variable and can be accessed from any part of the program this ability of global variable x is shown by by defining a function that uses the value of ‘x’ without it having an ‘x’ as parameter nor as a variable declared inside the function.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17 | #---------------------------------------------------Global scope  x = 10 # Global variable  y = 20 # Global variable  z = 30 # Global variable  def foo(): # foo's definition, part of the global scope  #---------------------------------------------------Global scope  #------------------foo's local scope starts  a = 0 # foo's local variable  print(a, x, y, z, b) # foo can access global variables  #------------------foo's local scope ends  #---------------------------------------------------Global scope  b = 40 # Global variable  foo() # making a call to function foo  #---------------------------------------------------Global scope |

This program prints the output below. Note that the function foo can read the global variables.



Take a look at an interesting case where the python interpreter raises an error because it misunderstands what is actually meant.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13 | #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope  x = 10 # Global variable  def foo(): # foo's definition, part of the global scope  #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope  #------------------------------------foo's local scope starts  x = x + 40 # Trying to change the value of x ---------!  a = 0 # foo's local variable  print(a, x) # foo can access global variables  #------------------------------------foo's local scope ends  #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope  foo() # Calling foo  #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope |

When the above code is executed the interpreter raises an error because, in the normal case when an assignment statement is encountered by the interpreter in a local scope, the name on the right hand side of the assignment is considered to be local variable of that local scope. So when the interpreter encounters the statement “x = x + 40”, it checks the left hand side, creates a new name ‘x’ in the local scope of the function “foo” then checks the expression on the right hand side of the assignment statement tries to access the non existent object associated to the local variable ‘x’. it raises an error because ‘x’ is referenced in an expression before it’s assigned a value. When the above code is executed, it gives the following output.



To solve this problem of not being able to modify a global variable, python provides a global variable which will be discussed in the sections that follow.

**Local Variables**

A variable that is declared inside a local scope is a local variable, a variable local to the scope that it was created in. A local variable exists only in the scope that it was defined in and can not be accessed outside of that scope. Local variable are created just like global variables the only difference being that local variables are declared inside functions or are arguments of a function call and global variables are declared at the global scope of a python program. The example below creates a local variable inside function “foo”.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | def foo(): # foo's definition  #------------------------------------foo's local scope starts  a = "I’m a local variable in function foo!" # foo's local variable  print(a)  #------------------------------------foo's local scope ends  foo() |

The output prints the output given below.



In the example below the variable ‘a’ that is local to the function “foo” is accessed outside of the scope of the variable which results in an error.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | def foo(): # foo's definition  #------------------------------------foo's local scope starts  a = 0 # foo's local variable  print(a)  #------------------------------------foo's local scope ends  #------------------------------------------------Global scope    print(a) #--------------------------> a is not defined in this scope!  #------------------------------------------------Global scope |

The following error is raised when the above program is executed as the variable ‘a’ is defined in the local scope of function “foo” and is available for use only there, it can’t be accessed by the upper levels. This program raises the error shown below.



**Global and local variables with the same name**

When a variable is declared in the local scope of a function that has the same name as a variable in the global scope, which variable gets accessed? In such cases the python prefers the local variable over the global variable, so when a variable name in the local scope is accessed that has the same name as a variable in the global scope the object associated to that name in the local scope is returned. The code example below shows an instance of this case.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14 | #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope  a = 10 # Global variable  def foo(): # foo's definition, part of the global scope  #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope  #------------------------------------foo's local scope starts  a = 0 # foo's local variable  return a # The local variable a is accessed (a = 0)  #------------------------------------foo's local scope ends  #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope  print("The value of 'a' in foo is ",foo())  print("The value of 'a' in global scope is ", a)  #-------------------------------------------------------Global scope |

In the above code, the same name ‘a’ is used both in the global scope as well as in the local scope of function “foo”. When the values of both variables are printed we get different values as the local variables preferred over global if there is a name match



Lets look back at the previous example where we try to change the value of a global variable inside a function. This causes an error to be raised by the python interpreter, and it’s already been mentioned that the solution python provides for this is the “global” keyword

In Python the global keyword allows modification variables that are outside the current scope. They can be used to create global variables and modify it in the local context.

Here are some things to remember while using the global keyword.

1. A variable is by default a local to a function when it is declared inside the function
2. A variable is by default a global variable when its declared outside a function. It makes no difference using the global keyword on variables defined outside functions.
3. The global keyword can be used inside functions to read and write global variables inside functions.

Lets take a look at some examples that illustrate the use and working of the global keyword.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | x = 20 # x is a global variable  def printx():  print(x) # Since there is no local variable x, the global variable x  # can be accessed  printx() |

This example code produces the below output.



Here, notice that as the function printx() doesn’t have a local variable ‘x’, it can read the value of the global variable ‘x’, but the interpreter raises an error when we try to write to the same variable.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | x = 20 # x is a global variable  def printx():  x = x + 4 # try using the value of the global variable  print(x)  printx() |

When the above program is ran it raises the error below,because the value of a global variable is being modified in the function.without using the global keyword it is only possible to read the value of a global variable inside a function



The global keyword can be used to overcome this kind of a problem where the modifications to global variables from within a function is required. The example below shows how a global keyword can be used to modify a global variable from within a function. To modify a global variable from inside a function this variable has to first to be declared as global inside the function it needs to be used in. This is illustrated in the example below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | x = 20 # x is a global variable  def printx():  global x # Now the global variable x can be modified  x = x + 4 # No error raised  print("This is the value of x inside printx: %i" %x)  printx()  print("This is the value of x outside printx: %i" %x) |

The output of the above program is given below. notice that the value of the variable ‘x’ is the same inside and outside the printx() function. This is because variable ‘x’ inside the printx() function now refers to the same object as the variable ‘x’ outside this function.



The global keyword can also be used in nested functions, let’s take a look at an example of using the global keyword in a nested function.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  1617 | a = 10  print("a in the global scope before calling foo: ", a)  def foo():  a = 40  print("a in local scope before calling nested\_foo: ", a)    def nested\_foo():  global a  a = 20    nested\_foo()  print("a in local scope after calling nested\_foo: ", a)  foo()  print("a in the global scope before calling foo: ", a) |

When the global keyword is used on the variable ‘a’ in the nested\_foo() function, any change that this function makes to the variable ‘a’ in it’s scope affects the variable at the global scope. The output of the above program is given below.



**Non local variables**

Non local variables are used in nested functions where the local scope is not defined, so the variable can’t be in either the local nor the global scope.

The keyword nonlocal is used to declare a non local variable in python.let’s take a look at an example that explains non local variables in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | def foo():  #------------------------------------foo's local scope starts  a = 20 # foo's local variable  print("a in foo: ", a)  #------------------------------------foo's local scope ends  def nested\_foo():  nonlocal a # Now 'a' is a non local variable  a = a + 20  print("a in nested\_foo: ", a)  nested\_foo()  print("a in foo: ", a)  #------------------------------------------------Global scope  foo()  #------------------------------------------------Global scope |

The output of the above program is given below.



Here the function nested\_foo() is defined in the local scope of the function foo(). The nonlocal keyword is used to declare ‘a’ to be a non local variable. Observe that when a nonlocal variable is changed, this change also reflects on the local variable ‘a’ of function foo(). This is because the variable ‘a’ which is in the local scope of function foo() is now changed by function nested\_foo().

## Exercises

1. Suppose you need to compute the square root of a number in a Python program. Would it be a good idea to write the code to perform the square root calculation? Why or why not?

2. Which of the following values could be produced by the call random.randrange(0, 100) function?

**4.5 34 -1 100 0 99**

3. Classify each of the following expressions as legal or illegal. Each expression represents a call to a standard Python library function.

(a) math.sqrt(4.5)

(b) math.sqrt(4.5, 3.1)

(c) random.rand(4)

(d) random.seed()

(e) random.seed(-1)

4. From geometry: Write a computer program that, given the lengths of the two sides of a right triangle adjacent to the right angle, computes the length of the hypotenuse of the triangle. (See Figure ??.) If you are unsure how to solve the problem mathematically, do a web search for the Pythagorean theorem.



5. Write a guessing game program in which the computer chooses at random an integer in the range 1. . . 100. The user’s goal is to guess the number in the least number of tries. For each incorrect guess the user provides, the computer provides feedback whether the user’s number is too high or too low.

6. Extend Problem 5 by keeping track of the number of guesses the user needed to get the correct answer. Report the number of guesses at the end of the game.

7. Extend Problem 6 by measuring how much time it takes for the user to guess the correct answer. Report the time and number of guesses at the end of the game.

8. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x):**

**return x + 2**

**def proc(n):**

**return 2\*n + 1**

**def main():**

**x = proc(5)**

**main()**

9. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x):**

**return x + 2**

**def main():**

**x = proc(5)**

**y = proc(4)**

**main()**

10. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x):**

**print(x + 2)**

**def main():**

**x = proc(5)**

**main()**

11. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x):**

**print(x + 2)**

**def main():**

**proc(5)**

**main()**

12. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x, y):**

**return 2\*x + y\*y**

**def main():**

**print(proc(5, 4))**

**main()**

13. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x, y):**

**return 2\*x + y\*y**

**def main():**

**print(proc(5))**

**main()**

14. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x):**

**return 2\*x**

**def main():**

**print(proc(5, 4))**

**main()**

15. Is the following a legal Python program?

**def proc(x):**

**print(2\*x\*x)**

**def main():**

**proc(5)**

**main()**

16. The programmer was expecting the following program to print 200. What does it print instead? Why does it print what it does?

**def proc(x):**

**x = 2\*x\*x**

**def main():**

**num = 10**

**proc(num)**

**print(num)**

**main()**

17. Is the following program legal since the variable x is used in two different places (proc and main)? Why or why not?

**def proc(x):**

**return 2\*x\*x**

**def main():**

**x = 10**

**print(proc(x))**

**main()**

18. Is the following program legal since the actual parameter has a different name from the formal parameter (y vs. x)? Why or why not?

**def proc(x):**

**return 2\*x\*x**

**def main():**

**y = 10**

**print(proc(y))**

**main()**

19. Complete the following distance function that computes the distance between two geometric points (x1,y1) and (x2,y2):

**def distance(x1, y1, x2, y2):**

**...**

Test it with several points to convince yourself that is correct.

20. What happens if a client passes too many parameters to a function?

# Python Modules

Modules in python allow a logical organization of code. When code gets too large to manage, as already discussed it’s best break this code into pieces that can interact with each other, each piece having it’s own independent functionality. These pieces generally have some attribute that have some relation to each other, this could be that they belong to the same class of member variables and member methods or that they belong to the same set of similar but independent functions. It would very advantageous if this code could be shared and reused in other python programs by the same or a different programmer. For this python gives modules the ability to bring in code that’s already been written and this is an important way that python provides code reusability. This method of including the code in other modules in another program is called “importing”. In a single sentence a module can be defined as “self contained and organized pieces of python code that can be shared”.

In python modules are in the form of a python file i.e with a “.py” extension, so any file with a “.py” extension and has python code code is considered python module. Modules can be used to break down large and unmanageable code into a more structured and organized set of pieces that can be reused later in other python files.

An example of the use of function’s is that all your most used functions can be defined in a python file and imported in any other python file without the need to copy all the function definitions. Let’s take a look at an example that creates a python module that defines a function that returns the square of provided number.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | #===========================================================  # Module "MyModule.py"  #===========================================================  def square(x):  """This function returns  the square of the given number"""  result = x \* x  return result |

This module named “MyModule” has a function “square” defined inside it, this function takes an numeric value as it’s parameter and returns it’s square. A module can be imported into another module or to the python shell, allowing them to use the attributes(classes and functions) that are defined inside the module. To do this python provides the import keyword. Try importing our previously defined module in to the python shell with the following statement(make sure the shell runs in the same directory that the module exists in).



This statement doesn’t add the names of the module attributes(functions and classes) to the current symbol table directly, it only adds the name “MyModule” to it, so the function defined in that module can’t directly be invoked. It can however be invoked using the module name( MyModule ) and the dot operator( . ) like in the example below.



Just like the module that we just made python provides several standard modules that are already available to use. The full list of python standard module and its description is available in the documentation at “python.org” or you can take this link <docs.python.org/3/py-modindex.html>.

As the standard modules are just modules that are already written, the method to import them is the same as importing user defined modules. Let’s discuss the different methods to import python modules.

**The import statement**

Modules can be imported with the import keyword, after importing the attributes that were defined in the function can be accessed by the module that it was imported into with the module’s name and the dot operator( . ) as described in the previous section. Let’s take an example of importing one of python’s standard modules that we have already dealt with before.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | import math  # ask user for input  num = eval(input("Enter a number: "))  num\_root = math.sqrt(num) # Using the "sqrt()" function  # defined in the math module  # print the result  print("The square root of", num, " is ", num\_root) |

The output of this program when it is executed is given below.



**import by renaming**

When a module is imported with the import statement, the module’s name becomes the handle to access the attributes that are defined in the module. Python allows renaming the handle used to access the contents of a module by renaming the module handle at the import statement. This can be done with the as keyword that python provides. An example of it’s use is shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | import math as m  num = eval(input("Enter a number: "))  num\_root = m.sqrt(num) # Observe that the module handle is 'm'  num\_root = math.sqrt(num) # math is not recognized  print("The square root of ", num, " is ", num\_root) |

In this program the handle for the “math” module that was imported is now ‘m’ so the name “math ” no longer recognized in our scope, making math.sqrt()an invalid call and m.sqrt() a valid call.

**The from..import statement**

Python allows importing specific names from a module instead of instead of importing the entire module. This can be done with the from..import statement. The general syntax for the from..import statement is given below.

from <module\_name> import <name>

In this example we’ll just import the sqrt() function from the math module. When specific attributes of a module are imported into a python program, the that specific attribute get’s added to the symbol table, so the module name or any other attributes that haven’t been imported are not recognized.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | from math import sqrt # Specifically import the sqrt() function  # Now "sqrt" is in the symbol table.  num = eval(input("Enter a number: "))  square\_root = sqrt(num) # Function sqrt() can be called  # without the dot operator.  print("The square root of ", num, " is ", square\_root) |

One of the possible outputs of the above program is shown below.



Note that in the above program the square root function is called directly without using the dot operator with the module name that is because the from..import statement at line one, adds the function name “sqrt” to the symbol table allowing it to be called as though it was defined in this same file. You can also see that the name is “math” isn’t recognized in the program as it wasn’t added to the symbol table.



**Importing all names in a module**

The general syntax for importing all the names in a module is shown below.

from <module\_name> import \*

When an import is performed this way all the names in the module imported from gets added to the symbol table, so they can be used as if they were defined in the python file that imported them. This method to import isn’t a good practice as it affects the readability of the program and may some time result in unwanted duplicate names.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | # Not a good practice to import all names  from math import \* # import all names in the math module  # Warning 1 - Unable to detect undefined names  print("the square root of 12000 is ", sqrt(12000))  # Warning 2 - sqrt may be undefined or defined from start imports. |

The output of the above program is given below.



Observe that there are two warnings that have been put up.

1. When all the names from a module is imported, names that are undefined could be from the star import
2. Function sqrt() could either be undefined or defined in the start imports

Another problem that could arise from using star imports is that programmer might not know whether the names that is declared in the program have already been declared in the module that is being imported, this could cause duplicate definitions for an identifier. In the code below the identifier “pow” is being redefined even though it has already been imported from the math module.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | # Not a good practice to import all names  from math import \* # import all names in the math module  # Warning 1 - Unable to detect undefined names  def pow(x, y):  return y \*\* x  print(pow(8, 2))  # pow(x ,y) in the math module returns x \*\* y  # function pow(x, y) has been redefined to return y \*\* x |

The output of this program is 256(since 2 \*\* 8) instead of 64.0(in which case 8 \*\* 2) if the call was made to pow() function defined in the math module.

**Module search path**

When the python interpreter encounters an import statement where is requested python module searched for? Python searches several locations for the module requested. The search first starts by checking if the module that was requested is a built in method, if it is, then interpreter has the module that it needs, in the case that it isn’t the python interpreter searches the directories that are specified in sys.path , the search proceeds in the following order

1. Search the current directory.
2. Search the list of directories in the PYTHONPATH environment variable.
3. Search the installation dependent default variable.

The list of directories in sys.path can be modified to add user specified paths.

**Reloading modules**

Python interpreters during it’s session doesn’t import the same module more than once, yes it can import several modules that have different names. Python interpreter when it encounters an import statement, does not import the specified module if it already imported a module with the same name during that same session. This behaviour of the interpreter is illustrated in the code example given below. For this we’ll be using two python files, one is a python module to import(Example.py) and the other one that imports the previously created module multiple times(ModuleReloading.py).

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | #======================================================  # Module "Example.py"  #======================================================  """ Using this module to illustrate how the interpreter  reacts multiple imports of the same module """  print("The interpreter just imported Example.py")  print("It will ignore the next import on Example.py") |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | #======================================================  # "ModuleReloading.py"  # This program shows the python interpreters behaviour  # when there are multiple imports on a module.  #======================================================  import imp  import Example  import Example  import Example  import Example |

The output when ModuleReloading.py is executed is given below. Observe that the module “Example.py” is imported only once.



There are some cases where it may be required to import the same module twice like when there’s a change in a module during execution, a solution to this could be to restart the interpreter so it forgets that it has imported that module, but this does not help much. Python has a better way to solve this problem, it provides a reload() function inside the imp module to reload a module. Now let’s try running the same program again by using the reload function to reload the modules instead.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | #======================================================  # "ModuleReloading.py"  # This program shows the python interpreters behaviour  # when there are multiple imports on a module.  #======================================================  import imp  import Example  imp.reload(Example)  imp.reload(Example) |

In the output below observe that the modules have been reloaded.



**The dir() function**

Python provides as a built in method that can be used to find out what names a module has defined inside it. For the illustration of the dir() function we’ll create a python module named “dirTest” as follows.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18 | #===========================================================  # Module "dirTest.py"  #===========================================================  # Variable names  var1 = 1  var2 = 2  var3 = 3  # Function definition  def func1():  print("This is func1")  def func2():  print("This is func2")  def func3():  print("This is func3") |

Calling the function dir() on a module’s name returns a sorted list of names. In this list there is a set of names that begin with an underscore( \_ ), these names are default python attributes that are associated to a module and are not user defined names. The rest of the names are user defined, and contains all the names that where defined in the module. Calling the dir() for the above module returns the sorted list of names shown below. The dir() function won’t recognize the module name until it’s imported, so import the module before making the call to dir().



The names in the list that start with an underscore are default to the module and aren’t user defined. For example the name “\_\_name\_\_” is the name of the module.



The dir() when called without any arguments passed returns all the names in the current namespace. Try declaring some names, making some imports in the python shell and see what it returns.







## Packages

Files are easy to organize as a hierarchy of folders/directories, where each directory can have several other files and sub directories. Generally files that share a similarity in some a placed into the same directory. The advantage of directories is that it allows the organizing the files based on their relevance or some other criteria. Python enables organizing modules as a hierarchy of directories with “packages” for directories and “modules” for files.

A good practice while working on a python project is t always organize relevant modules by placing them in the same package and by placing irrelevant modules in different packages, this practice proves to remove much of the confusion when dealing with projects that are on a larger scale. Just like directories can have other sub-directories and other files, a package in python can have other packages and modules.

The directories that have a module named “\_\_init\_\_.py” are considered to be python packages. Although this file can be left empty, it is a good practice to have code that initializes the package in this module. The figure below shows a helpful visualization of valid python package.



The above package hierarchy could be a possible organization of modules when developing a paint application with 2D, 3D and 4D features. A directory isn’t considered to be a package without the “\_\_init\_\_.py” module. Observe that each package in the above visualization has an “\_\_init\_\_.py” module. Now let’s look at the different ways that packages can be handled in a python program.

**Importing modules from packages**

Importing specific packages from a package has the same general syntax as importing specific names from a module. Importing specific modules from a package can be done with the dot operator( . ). From the above package hierarchy to import the “Abstraction” module from the “4D” sub package, the following statement is used.

import Art.4D.Abstraction

Let’s assume that this module “Abstraction” has a function named draw() to used this function the entire path should be used to reference it as shown below.

Art.4D.Abstraction.draw(<argument list>)

This construct to reference the function is lengthy so instead the module can be imported without the package prefix as,

from Art.4D import Abstraction

When imported this way the function can be called in a more easier way as

Abstraction.draw(<argument list>)

To specifically import the draw() function from the Abstraction module we can use the import statement below.

from Art.4D.Abstraction import draw

Now the draw function can be called as,

draw(<argument list>)

This is obviously easier to write looking at the amount of typing to do but not recommended. Using the full namespace while calling makes it clear exactly which function is being called and reduces the possibility of a collision of two name in your code.

# Python classes and objects

This chapter discusses classes, objects and object oriented programming in python. In python any construct that contains a value of any type is an object. Python is an “Object oriented programming language”(OOP language) but there is no compulsion to use OOP in a program, which means as we’ve already seen in the previous examples, python programs can be written without using any class definitions and class instances although it’s recommended to use them. Object oriented programming eliminates many of the problems encountered when the programming approach is procedural.

Imperative programming is a programming pattern or model where statements are used to change the state of a program. Just like how we express commands in our natural language, an imperative program consists of a sequence of commands or statements(can include branching statements) for a computer to execute. An example of this is the Assembly language. Procedural programming is a kind of imperative programming where the programming is built using procedures(we call them functions in python). As concepts of classes and objects weren’t discussed or used yet, all examples that has been dealt with till now are can all be abstracted to have a procedural model or pattern.

Python is a multi-paradigm programming language a python program be either written using a procedural approach or an object oriented approach. Although using an object oriented approach is optional in python, it is highly encouraged.

Several of pythons built in types have been demonstrated so far, it’s time to define our own types(user defined types). For now we’ll define a type called “Point\_4D” that represents a point in a four dimensional space. Mathematically a four dimensional point is of the form given below

(w, x, y, z)

Here w, x , y, z represent the values of the point on each dimension. There are three ways we can represent this four dimensional point in python

* The values of w, x , y, z can be stored into four distinct variables.
* The values of w, x , y, z can be stored in a list or a tuple.
* A four dimensional point type can be defined to create objects that can appropriately represent an instance of (w, x, y, z)

Even though defining classes(creating a new type) and using their instances instead is a more complicated task, it is a good practice because it comes with several advantages that will be discussed in the following sections.

A “user defined type” can also be called a “class”. A class definitions header is shown below.

class <type\_name>

“““<DocString>”””

An object in python has two characteristics, which are

* Attributes(variables)
* Behaviour(Methods)

So in the previous example of the four dimensional point

* w, x ,y, z being the variables
* Plot() being the method used to draw the point based on the values of w, x, y, z.

Object oriented programming places the focus on creating code that can be reused.The concept of creating reusable code is DRY, which stands for don’t repeat yourself.

Object oriented programming in python follows some basic principles that are listed and briefly described in the table given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Principle** | **Description** |
| Inheritance | A class can Inherit the attributes and behaviors of another class without modifying it’s own details. |
| Encapsulation | Hiding the details of a class from other objects. |
| polymorphism | A single method that shows different behaviors depending on the parameters passed to it by the caller. |

In the following section we’ll briefly discuss the key concepts of object oriented programming in python.

## Introduction to object oriented programming

In this section we’ll discuss the key concepts of object oriented programming in python briefly. The concepts that will be gone through here are

* Classes
* Objects
* Methods
* Inheritance
* Encapsulation
* Polymorphism

### Classes

A class for it’s object is a blueprint(description / definition). For example if a class is being defined for “human” objects than the class will have details i.e the name declarations for details like name, gender, weight, height, eye color, hair color, skin etc, and the class would also have functions(behaviors) defined specifically for the class like work, sleep, etc. The general syntax to define a class in python is shown below. The body of the class definition is identified by it’s indentation, the first unindented line marks the end of the class body. Remember that a type’s name must start with a letter or an underscore.

class <type\_name>

<docstring>

<statement 1>

.

.

.

<statement n>

Class is way to bundle together data and functionality. Making a new class creates a new type of object allowing the creation of new instances of objects of that type. Every instance of a class has attributes associated with it to maintain the state that it is in, in addition to this class instances can have methods that are defined in this class for modifying the state of the class instance.

The statements inside a class definition are usually function definitions although other kinds of statements are allowed. When a class header is encountered by the python interpreter it creates a new namespace, which is the local scope. All the local names are a part of this namespace, especially function definition in the classes body are bound to this namespace.

When the python interpreter leaves class definition normally(the end of the definition identified by the indentation),

* A “class object” is created. This class object is wrapper around the contents created by the class namespace.
* The control returns to the original local scope which existed before the class definition was entered
* The “class object” is bound to this original local scope with the class name that was specified in the class header

### Class objects

There are two operation that are supported by by class objects which are “attribute references” and “instantiation”. The standard syntax used for all attribute references, is used to reference attributes of class objects(i.e the dot operator). All the names that were in a classes namespace when it’s class object was created are valid attributes of that class.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16 | #========================================================  # Defining a simple class  #========================================================  class SimpleClass:  """An Example of a simple class"""    # Variable assignments  a = 3.1415  b = "Ipython"  c = -12 \* 3    # Method definitions  def sayHello(self):  return "Hello user!!" |

In the above example definition of a class the following attribute references are valid.

* SimpleClass.a - Returns an integer object
* SimpleClass.b - Returns an string object
* SimpleClass.c - Returns an integer object
* SimpleClass.sayHello - Returns a function object

The attributes of the class object that is created when the python interpreter leaves the body of the above class definition can have it’s attributes changed by assignment. \_\_doc\_\_ is also a valid attribute of the class object. This attribute has the reference to the docstring of the class and returns the docstring when used as or in an expression. The examples below that were executed in the python shell illustrates what was discussed about class objects. Here, first the above program is executed.





Note that here the class object belongs to the “main” namespace, the attributes of the “SimpleClass” class object belongs to the “simpleClass” namespace. A class instantiation takes the form of a function. For the sake of understanding consider the class object as parameterless function that when called as a function , it return a new instance of it’s class. For example for the above class.



The above statement-8 creates a new instance of class “SimpleClass” and assigns this object to the local variable ‘a’, also you can see that the variable ‘a’ is of type “\_\_main\_\_.SimpleClass” and belongs to the “\_\_main\_\_” namespace.

An instantiation operation performed by calling the class object creates an empty object. There are cases where there is a requirement to create objects that are instantiated to a specific initial state. For this a special method “\_\_init\_\_” can be defined in the class definition. An example for it’s definition is shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  1718  19 | #========================================================  # Defining a simple class  #========================================================  class SimpleClass:  """An Example of a simple class"""    # Variable assignments  a = 3.1415  b = "Ipython"  c = -12 \* 3    # Method definitions  def \_\_init\_\_(self): # Automatically invoked at class instantiation  self.a = 10  def sayHello(self):  return "Hello user!!" |

When a class defines an “\_\_init\_\_” method, the method is invoked immediately for a newly created class instance. The example below illustrates this effect of using an “\_\_init\_\_” method in the class definition.



For the sake of flexibility \_\_init\_\_ method may have arguments that are passed to it. In this case the arguments that are passed to the class instantiation operator also gets passed to the classes \_\_init\_\_ method. An example for this case is shown below for the above class definition.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 13  14  15  16  17 | def \_\_init\_\_(self, x, y, z):  self.a = x  self.b = y  self.c = z |

You can see below how making the above change to the \_\_init\_\_ method of the “SimpleClass” class effects the initial state of the instance of the class.



### Instance objects

There is only a single operation that can be understood by an instance object, and that it attribute reference. For an instance object there are two kinds of attribute names that are valid, and they are data attributes and methods. Data attributes are the same as “instance variables”, there is no need to declare them and like local variables they come into existence when they are assigned a value. The other kind of attribute reference that can be made is a reference to a method defined in the class. A method is a function that is defined in and belongs to a class. Note that the term method is not unique to instance of classes as other data types in python can also have methods like how the list type has the methods like sort, remove, insert, append defined inside it’s definition.

Valid method names on a class instance(i.e an object) are the functions that are defined in the body of the class. All the attributes of a class which is a function object are “methods” for the the instances of that class. So from our previous example of the class “SimpleClass”, if “obj1” is an instance object of this class then valid attribute references would be

* obj1.a
* Obj1.b
* Obj1.c
* Obj1.sayHello

And invalid attribute references are the references to names that have not been defined in the class definition like x, var1, func, etc. Take a look at the below example that was executed in the python shell.



### Method object

Usually methods of an instance object are invoked right after it gets bound to this object for example a method can be called as follows



Method objects aren’t necessarily invoked right away, they can also be stored and invoked later in the program like in the example below where the method object of the “obj1” class instance is stored in a local variable and used later in the following statements.



In the above statement the variable “methObj1” has a reference to the method object “sayHello” of the instance object “Obj1”

Let’s go through what exactly happens on a method call in python. In the previous example the statement obj1.sayHello() was used. This statement invokes the sayHello() method of the obj1 instance object. You may have noticed that this method is being invoked without any arguments passed although the method definition inside the definition of the “SimpleClass” type specifies the function to be called by passing the argument “self”. The python interpreter raises an error if there is a mismatch in the number of positional arguments in the call and the number of positional parameters specified in the function invocation. The interpreter doesnt raise an error here because unlike normal functions, when a method is called the instance object is passed as the first argument of the method, and therefore the call Obj1.sayHello() is exactly the same as SimpleClass(obj1). Generally speaking we can say that calling a method with a list of ‘n’ arguments is the same as calling it’s corresponding function with the same list of arguments with the instance objects added at the beginning of the list.

To put it more clear the process of invoking an objects method is given below.

* If a non data attribute of an instance object is used then this instance object’s class is searched.
* If this name is a valid class attribute which is a function object then an abstract object is made by putting together the instance object and the abstract object that was just found.
* If a method object s called along with an argument list then create a new argument list using the instance object and the argument list then call the function object with this new argument list that was created.

### Class and instance variables

Instance variables are the data attributes that are unique(doesn’t mean different) to each object instance, and class variables are the data attributes and method attributes that are shared by all instances of the class. Lets take a look at an example that illustrates instance and class variables.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | # Class variables -- Shared by all instances of the class  # Instance variables -- Applies to a specific instances of a class  class Language:  """User defined type for programming languages"""    languageType = "High level" # Class variable    def \_\_init\_\_(self, name):  self.languageName = name # Instance variable |

The above python code defines a class “Language” which two data attributes. The variable “languageType” is a class variable that has the same value for every instance object that is created from this class definition. The variable “languageName” is an instance type which is specific to an instance object which means that the value of this instance variable depends on the argument that is passed by the caller of the class object to create an instance object. Let’s create some object instances of the above class and check the values of the instance variables and the class variables of the objects that were create. In the below examples from the python shell see how the class variables of all the instance objects are same for all the newly created objects.





When the value of a class variable is reassigned in an instance object, this change is noticed by all instance objects of that class as the class variable is shared by all the instance objects, shared meaning there the object that is referenced by the class variable is the same object for every instance object. On the other hand an instance objects, instance variable refers to an object that is different from objects referenced by the instance variables of other instance objects. This can be made more clear by going through the example shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15 | # Class variables -- Shared by all instances of the class  # Instance variables -- Applies to a specific instances of a class  class Language:  """User defined type for programming languages"""    languageType = "High level" # Class variable  features = [] # Class variable    def \_\_init\_\_(self, name):  self.languageName = name # Instance variable  def addFeature(self, feature):  self.feature.append(feature) # Class variable |

In the above program a new class variable “features” was added to the “Language” class. This class variable represents the list of features of the programming language as this variable is shared by all the instance objects, when the list s appended with a feature by an instance object, the value of the list is changed for all the instance objects of that class. Although in reality this is obviously not true for programming languages the example is just used for the sake of explanation. The statements below that were executed on the python shell illustrates this behaviour of class variables. In other programming languages like C# , this class variables are similar to “static variables”.





### Inheritance

Inheritance is an important feature f object oriented programming, so python classes do support inheritance. The general python syntax to define a derived class is given below.

class <name of derived type>(<name of the base type>):

<statement 1>

.

.

.

<statement n>

It’s necessary for the “base class” to be defined in a scope that contains the definition of the “derived class”. python allows using other arbitrary expressions to be used in place of “<name of the base type>” in the class header of the derived class. This enables us to derive from classes that are defined in other modules like the class header shown below.

class <name of derived type>(<module name>.<name of the base type>):

The execution of a derived class definition is the same as the execution of the base class definition. When a class object is created for a derived class the base class is remembered along with it for the sake of resolving attribute references. When an attribute is requested, the attribute is first searched in the derived class, if it’s not found then the derived class’s base class is searched for the requested attribute, as long as the requested attribute is not found and the inheritance chain didn’t end this search process recursively continues upward along the inheritance chain.

The instantiation of a derived class is the same as the instantiation of a normal class. Calling <name of derived type>(), creates a new instance of the derived class. Resolving method references proceeds as follows, the corresponding class attribute is searched starting from the derived class and the search continue up the inheritance chain until the method is found or the end of the chain is reached in which case the python interpreter raises an error that the requested attribute is not defined.

When derived classes define a method attribute that has already been defined in it’s base class the method defined by the base class is considered by the interpreter. As there is no priority for calls to methods in the same class, there is a possibility that a method call may end up calling a method from one of it’s sub-classes.

There could be cases where a derived classes method that overrides a method from a base wants to extend the base class method instead of replacing the method. In such cases the base class method can be called with the following syntax given that the base class is accessible from the scope it is being used in.

<base class name>.<method name>(self,<argument list>)

There are two built in functions that python provides that work with inheritance and they are listed and described briefly in the table below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Method** | **Description** |
| isinstance() | This function is used to check an instance object’s type.  Example:  isinstance(obj, int)  The above function call returns a true only when the type of the object “obj” is “int” |
| issubclass() | This function is used check whether the first argument is the subclass of the second argument and on this basis returns either a “True” or “False”  Example:  issubclass(bool, int)  The above function call returns “True” because the type “bool” is a subclass of type “int”  issubclass(str, int)  The above function call returns “False” because the type “str” is not a subclass of type “int” |

Lets take a look at an example program that illustrates how inheritance works in python

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | #==================================================================  # Python program that illustrates how inheritance works in python  #==================================================================  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  class CelestialBody:  """All the data attributes and method attributes  of this class are inherited by the class "DerivedClass" """    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  print("A celestial body was created")  def whoAmI(self):  print("I am a celestial body")  def speak(self):  print("I'm outside the earth's atmosphere")  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  class Jupiter(CelestialBody):  """This class inherits the  attributes of the class "BaseClass"  defined above"""    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  super().\_\_init\_\_() # Call the constructor of the parent  print("It's name is Jupiter")  def whoAmI(self):  """This method overrides the  whoisThis() method of the parent class"""  print("I am Jupiter")  def brag(self):  print("I have 79 moons!!")  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  #----------------Instantiation and method calls--------------------  jupyter = Jupiter() # Calls Jupiter's constructor and creates an  # creates a Jupiter instance object  jupyter.whoAmI() # This method is defined in class Jupiter  jupyter.speak() # This method is defined in class CestialBody  jupyter.brag() # This method is defined in class Jupiter  #----------------Instantiation and method calls-------------------- |

The output of the above program is given below.



In the above program there are two classes defined which are “CelestialBody”(the base class) and “Jupiter”( the derived class). An instance object was created from the class object of class “Jupiter”. as Jupiter inherits from the class “CelestialBody” all it’s data attributes and method attributes are inherited by class “Jupiter”, which make them accessible by instances of “Jupiter” objects. This explains why the instance object “jupyter” can invoke the method speak() which wasn’t defined in class Jupiter’s definition. The whoAmI() method that the instance object invokes is it’s own method and not the method of it’s parent(CelestialBody) as method attribute resolution starts from the bottom(class Jupiter) of the inheritance chain and continues to the top(class CelestialBody). The \_\_init\_\_() method of class Jupiter uses the super() function which allows an instance object to specifically access the attributes of it’s base class. The brag() method of the Jupiter class extends the functionality of the class “CelestialBody”.

### Multiple inheritance

Python also allows a form of “multiple inheritance” which enables a class to inherit from more than one base class the general syntax for a class definition of a derived class that inherits from more than one base class is shown below.

class <name of derived type>(<base 1>, <base 2>, . . .,<base x> ):

<statement 1>

.

.

.

<statement n>

For the simplest and most common cases the search for attributes that were inherited from a parent is a depth first search that doesn’t search the same class twice in case of an overlap in the hierarchy. The process of search for an attribute proceeds as follows.

1. Search for the attribute in the derived class if the requested attribute is not found then do step 2.
2. Search for the requested attribute in the left most parent in the derived classes header which in this case is “base-1”, if the attribute is not found then do step 3.
3. Search recursively in all the base classes of “base-1”. If the requested attribute is not found in then the next base class in the base class list of the derived class is searched as specified in steps 2 and 3.

The method resolution order is slightly more complex than the resolution approach described above. The order for resolving methods changes dynamically for the purpose of supporting cooperative invocations to the super()function. This approach in other programming languages is referred to as “call next method” and is in many ways better than the “super call” that is found in several “single inheritance” programming languages. Allowing the feature of multiple inheritance in a programming language creates the possibility of the problem of “diamond relationships”. diamond relationship is an inheritance chain where there is more than one path from a class in this chain to one of it’s predecessors as shown in the diagram below.



Dynamic resolution is needed because in python every case of multiple inheritance has at least diamond relationship as for example all classes in python inherit from the object class so any multiple inheritance case has more than one path to the object class. To prevent base classes from being accessed more than a dynamic algorithm is used to linearizes the order of resolution in a way that the ordering(left to right) that was specified in the derived class’s definition.

### Private variables

“Private variables” are variables that belong to an object, that can be accessed from within the object but not from outside of the object. Object oriented programming languages like C++, Java, C# and others support private variables, python is not one of those languages, but there is a convention which is used, which is that a name prefixed with an underscore is treated as non-public

Private variables are useful as they avoid name conflicts with the names that are defined by the sub-classes of a class. Although python doesn’t support private variables as of version 3.7 there is limited support offered called “name mangling”. private variables in other programming languages can’t be accessed from outside of a class and so, instance objects of only that specific class can access private variables of that class. This also means that instance objects of derived classes can’t access private variables of the base classes. Name mangling on the other hand textually replaces names of a specific format so the sub-classes are unaware of the name’s existence.

Identifiers with that are prefixed with at least two leading underscores and at most one trailing underscore(example: \_\_var, \_\_var2\_) are textually replaced with

\_<classname>\_\_<attribute name>

Here <classname> is the name of the class with any leading underscores removed. The the replacement is performed regardless of the position of the identifier as long as it occurs within the body of the class.

Name mangling allows derived classes to override methods but without breaking intra-class method calls in the base class. Lets take a look at an example that illustrates “Name mangling” in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25 | #------------------------class MapIterable--------------------------  class MapIterable:  def \_\_init\_\_(self, iterable):  self.items = []  self.\_\_mapper(iterable)  def mapper(self, iterable):  for item in iterable:  self.items.append(item)  \_\_mapper = mapper # Private copy of original the mapper() method    #------------------------class MapIterable--------------------------  #--------------------class MapIterableDerived-----------------------  class MapIterableDerived(MapIterable):  def mapper(self, keys, values):  # Gives a new signature for the mapper() method  # but does not break the \_\_init\_\_() method of the base class  for item in zip(keys, values):  self.items.append(item)    #--------------------class MapIterableDerived----------------------- |

The above example would still work even if the class MapIterableDerived defines a method called \_\_mapper() in the class definition because the identifier \_\_mapper in the base class is textually replaced by \_MapIterable\_\_mapper, and the identifier \_\_mapper in the derived class is textually replaced by \_MapIterableDerived\_\_mapper.

Remember that python supports mangling mainly to avoid accidents. These variables can still be accessed(for both reading and writing) from outside an instance object. Still, accessing these variables from outside of an object in some cases can be useful for debugging.

### Encapsulation

An important feature that object oriented programming languages provide is “Encapsulation” which allows restricting access to certain names in a program. Restricting access using name mangling has just been discussed in the previous subsection. In object oriented languages languages the private variables of a class can’t directly be accessed but they can be accessed by using getter and setter methods, this way the freedom to use these variables is limited to what is provided by the getter and setter methods of of each private variable. Let’s take a look at an example below that is given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  2021  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  2930  3132  33  34  35  36  3738  39  40  41  42  43  44  45 | #======================================================================  # Python program that demonstrates encapsulation in python  #======================================================================  #------------------------class Subscription----------------------------  class Subscription:    #Variable    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  print("You created a new subscription")  self.\_\_billingPeriod = 1 # Default period in months  def GetBillingPeriod(self):  print("Current billing period: {}".format(self.\_\_billingPeriod))  def SetBillingPeriod(self):  billingPeriod = eval(input("Enter the new billing period: "))  self.\_\_billingPeriod = billingPeriod  print("The new billing period: ", self.\_\_billingPeriod)  #------------------------class Subscription----------------------------  #-------------------Instantiation and method calls---------------------  sub1 = Subscription()  #print("The current billing period: ",sub1.\_\_billingPeriod)  # can't directly access the private variable  # So interpreter raises error when executed  sub1.GetBillingPeriod() # Accessing the private variable with the  # with the logic provided by the getter  # method  sub1.\_\_billingPeriod = 12 # Can't directly access the private variable  print("An attempt was made to change the private variable to 12")  sub1.GetBillingPeriod()  sub1.SetBillingPeriod() # Accessing the private variable with the  # with the logic provided by the setter  # method  sub1.GetBillingPeriod()  #-------------------Instantiation and method calls--------------------- |

In the example above a class is created with a constructor and two methods(GetBillingPeriod and SetBillingPeriod) defined. The instance variable that we want to focus on here is \_\_billingPeriod. The feature of private variables in python is partially provided with the help of name mangling. As the instance variable \_\_billingPeriod follows the private variable syntax as it is prefixed with two underscores, it will be considered for name mangling.

Name mangling makes a textual replacement of a variable name as discussed in the previous section and therefore when the the instance object is created from the “subscription” class, the instance variable it possesses is \_Subscription\_\_billingPeriod and not \_\_billingPeriod which is the name that is specified in “subscription” class definition.

When the method GetBillingPeriod() of an instance object is invoked,it prints the current billing period of the object which can be accessed through the variable \_Subscription\_\_billingPeriod. When the SetBillingPeriod() method of an instance object is invoked the user is prompted for an input which is then assigned to the variable \_Subscription\_\_billingPeriod, which is then printed back to the user.

Remember that because of the name mangling feature the variable name \_\_billingPeriod does not exist in the Subscription class object as it was textually replaced by \_Subscription\_\_billingPeriod. As this variable doesn’t exist it cant be accessed from outside it’s instance object, not even by the classes that inherit from the Subscription class.

When instance object “sub1” is created, the \_\_init\_\_() method is called which assigns the numerical value 1 to the instance variable \_Subscription\_\_billingPeriod, note that as of now the name \_\_billingPeriod does not exist in the scope of the instance object. When this name is accessed from within the class definition, name mangling textually replaces this name as previously discussed, and so when a private variable is accessed from within the class as in line 20 of the above program

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 20 | self.\_\_billingPeriod = billingPeriod |

This is seen by the interpreter as

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 20 | self.\_Subscription\_\_billingPeriod = billingPeriod |

When we try to read the value of \_\_billingPeriod from outside the class definition the python interpreter raises an error is as the name was does not exist \_\_billingPeriod yet.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 27 | print("The current billing period: ", sub1.\_\_billingPeriod) |

If the above line of python code is encountered by the interpreter, it raises the following error.



When we try to assign a value to the name , a new name \_\_billingPeriod is created in memory and is given a reference to the object that was assigned to it. This occurs at line 35.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 35 | sub1.billingPeriod = 12 |

The above line of code creates a new instance variable \_\_billing in the instance object sub1. This variable is different from the private instance variable \_Subscription\_\_billingPeriod, which was created at the time of instantiation. This can be verified as shown in the shell execution below.



As direct access of the private variable is prevented by name mangling, private variable \_\_BillingPeriod can instead be accessed with the class provided getter and setter methods(GetBillingPeriod and SetBillingPeriod) of the private variable \_\_BillingPeriod.

A possible output of the above program(when user input is 12) is given below.



In the next section we’ll discuss another important feature that object oriented programming provides.

### Polymorphism and method overriding

Literally speaking the term “polymorphism” means the ability to take multiple forms. Polymorphism in python allows a derived class to define methods with the same name as defined in one of their base classes.

As already discussed a derived class inherits all the attributes of one of it’s base classes. There may be cases where some of the methods of the base class that were inherited may not be suitable for objects of the derived class to use in such cases the derived class may want to redefine the method inherited from it’s base class. The process of redefining an already existing method which was inherited from a parent class is called as method overriding. As method resolution starts from the base class and proceeds up the chain of inheritance if a method requested is found in the derived class the definition in the derived class is used regardless of whether it has already been defined in the base class

If a method was overriden in the derived class, then the version of the method that will be called depends on the type of the objects that made the method call.In the case that a derived class object is used to call the method then the derived class version of the method is called on the other hand if the base class object is used to call the method that was overriden then the base classes version of this method is called instead. Let’s take a look at an example that demonstrates method overriding in python.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39  40  41  42  43  44  45  46  47  48 | #==================================================================  # Python program that demonstrates polymorphism in python  #==================================================================  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  class CelestialBody:  """All the data attributes and method attributes  of this class are inherited by the class "DerivedClass" """    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  print("A celestial body was created")  def whoAmI(self):  print("I am a celestial body")  def speak(self):  print("I'm outside the earth's atmosphere")  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  class Jupiter(CelestialBody):  """This class inherits the  attributes of the class "BaseClass"  defined above"""    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  super().\_\_init\_\_() # Call the constructor of the parent  print("It's name is Jupiter")  def whoAmI(self):  """This method overrides the  whoisThis() method of the parent class"""  print("I am Jupiter")  def brag(self):  print("I have 79 moons!!")  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  #----------------Instantiation and method calls--------------------  celestial\_body = CelestialBody() # Instantiating the object  jupiter = Jupiter() # Instantiating the object  celestial\_body.whoAmI() # Calls the base class method  jupiter.whoAmI() # Calls the derived class method  #----------------Instantiation and method calls-------------------- |

The above program when executed produces the output shown below.



The celestial\_body object is an instance object of type CelestialBody and so class “CelestialBody” version of the whoAmI() method is called on the other hand the jupiter object is an instance object of type “Jupiter” and so the class “Jupiter” version of the whoAmI() method is called instead. There are cases which requires using the base class version of the overriden method, in such cases the super() function can be used. An example of the use of the super function is shown in the example below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39  40  41  42  43  44  45  46  47  48 | #==================================================================  # Python program that demonstrates the use of the super() function  #==================================================================  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  class CelestialBody:  """All the data attributes and method attributes  of this class are inherited by the class "DerivedClass" """    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  print("A celestial body was created")  def whoAmI(self):  print("I am a celestial body")  def speak(self):  print("I'm outside the earth's atmosphere")  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  class Jupiter(CelestialBody):  """This class inherits the  attributes of the class "BaseClass"  defined above"""    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  super().\_\_init\_\_() # Call the constructor of the parent  print("It's name is Jupiter")  def whoAmI(self):  """This method overrides the  whoisThis() method of the parent class"""  print("I am Jupiter")  def brag(self):  print("I have 79 moons!!")  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  #----------------Instantiation and method calls--------------------  celestial\_body = CelestialBody() # Instantiating the object  jupiter = Jupiter() # Instantiating the object  celestial\_body.whoAmI() # Calls the base class method  jupiter.whoAmI() # Calls the derived class method  #----------------Instantiation and method calls-------------------- |

In the above program that now the whoAmI() method of class Jupiter in turn makes a call to the whoAmI() method of class “CelestialBody” using the super() function The output when the above program is executed is given below.



Polymorphism provides the ability to use a common interface for varying functionalities. Let’s say for example there is a requirement to add a fill color for a shape, and although there could be several different shapes the same method name can be invoked to fill color to the given shape, regardless of what shape it is. Polymorphism provides this ability. Let’s take a look at another example to make things clear.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39  40  41  42  43  44  45  46  47  48  49  50  51  52  53  54  55  56  57  58  59  60  61  62  63  64  65  66  67  68  69  70  71  72  73  74  75  76  77  78  79  80  81 | #==================================================================  # Python program that illustrates polymorphism in python  #==================================================================  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  class CelestialBody:  """All the data attributes and method attributes  of this class are inherited by the class "DerivedClass" """    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  print("A celestial body was created")  def whoAmI(self):  print("I am a celestial body")  def speak(self):  print("I'm outside the earth's atmosphere")  #------------------------class CelestialBody-----------------------  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  class Jupiter(CelestialBody):  """This class inherits the  attributes of the class "BaseClass"  defined above"""    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  super().\_\_init\_\_() # Call the constructor of the parent  print("It's name is Jupiter")  def whoAmI(self):  """This method overrides the  whoisThis() method of the base class"""  print("I am Jupiter")  def brag(self):  print("I have 79 moons!!")  #------------------------class Jupiter-----------------------------  #------------------------class Saturn------------------------------  class Saturn(CelestialBody):  """This class inherits the  attributes of the class "BaseClass"  defined above"""    def \_\_init\_\_(self):  "The constructor of the class"  super().\_\_init\_\_() # Call the constructor of the parent  print("It's name is Saturn")  def whoAmI(self):  """This method overrides the  whoisThis() method of the base class"""  print("I am Saturn")  def brag(self):  print("My rings are made up of ice")  #------------------------class Saturn------------------------------  #---------------------function definition--------------------------  def callBrag(Celestial\_Body):  """This function is a common interface,  it calls brag method of the Celestial body  passed as an argument"""  Celestial\_Body.brag()  #---------------------function definition--------------------------  #---------------Instantiation and function calls-------------------  # Instantiating the objects  jupiter = Jupiter()  saturn = Saturn()  # Pass the objects as arguments to the common interface  # observe that the appropriate method instance ins called  # based on the argument passed  callBrag(jupiter)  callBrag(saturn)  #---------------Instantiation and function calls------------------- |

The Above program defines three class CelestialbBody, Jupiter, Saturn with the class CelestialBody as the base class from which both classes Jupiter and Saturn inherit. Both these two class have a common method brag(), However the what these two methods do is different. To show polymorphism a common function was defined named callBrag() that takes an object of type CelestialBody and as class classes Jupiter and Saturn inherit from class CelestialBody, instance objects of these two classes make for valid arguments to this common function callBrag().

When the callBrag() function is called passing the instance objects of type Jupiter and type Saturn the appropriate method is invoked by the interpreter. The output of the above program when executed is given below.



## The object Class

All classes in python whether user defined or inbuilt implicitly inherit from the object class which makes the following two class definitions the same.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | # Here both the classes X and Y inherit from the object class  class X: # Implicitly inherits from the object class  pass  class Y(object): # Explicitly inherits from the object class  pass |

The object class in python is an inbuilt class that has special methods who’s names have two preceeding and trailing underscores that are inherited by all the classes. Three most important classes that are provided by the object class are given below.

1. \_\_new\_\_()
2. \_\_init\_\_()
3. \_\_str\_\_()

The \_\_new\_\_() method of the object class is defined to create the new instance object, then make a call to the \_\_init\_\_() method so the attributes of the object are initialized. The \_\_new\_\_() method of the object class isn’t usually overridden but if there is a need to change the way an instance object is created it most definitely can be overridden.

The \_\_init\_\_() method is responsible for initializing the attributes of the newly created instance object. This method is called from the \_\_new\_\_() method after the object has been created. The \_\_init\_\_() method is almost always overriden to specify how the attributes of the instance object will be initialized. Let’s look at an example of how the \_\_init\_\_() method can be overriden by a programmer to instantiate the class attributes.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | class Book:  numPages = 0 |

The above class has a single data attribute numPages which is assigned a default value of zero. When an instance object of this class is created the value of it’s variable numPages gets assigned the already specified value zero.



We can override the \_\_init\_\_() method that our book class inherited from the object class to initialize the variables as needed.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | class Book:  numPages = 0    def \_\_init\_\_(self, num\_pages):  self.numPages = num\_pages |

The shell execution below after the above program below shows that the class variable numPages was changed when the \_\_new\_\_() method called the \_\_init\_\_() method.



The \_\_str\_\_() method is defined to return a well formatted string representation of the instance object it belongs to. The object class defines the \_\_str\_\_() method to return a string in this format

<namespace>.<class name> object at <object’s memory address in hexadecimal>

The shell execution below calls the \_\_str\_\_() method for an instance object of the class defined above. Note that simply using an object’s name returns the string that is returned by the original \_\_str\_\_() method before overriding(This doesn’t mean that it can be used in expressions as a string type).



This format of the string may not usually be very helpful, so it of course can be changed by overriding the method in the derived class(which is every class in this case as all classes inherit from the object class). An example of this is shown in the class definition given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | class Book:  numPages = 0    def \_\_init\_\_(self, num\_pages):  self.numPages = num\_pages    def \_\_str\_\_(self):  print("This book has ", self.numPages, " pages!") |

Now lets make some calls to the \_\_str\_\_() method of instance objects of type “Book”, this is shown in the shell execution shown below.



## Operator overloading in python

Python operators work in a different way for different types like how the ‘+’ operator will perform arithmetic addition when it comes to integer types, will merge when it comes to lists and will concatenate for strings.

This feature of python that lets operators to perform differently when it comes to different types is called operator overloading. What does an operator do when it used on user defined types. Lets take a look at this with the user defined type “Point” which is defined below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | class Point:  def \_\_init\_\_(self, x = 0, y = 0, z = 0):  self.x = x  self.y = y  self.z = z    def \_\_str\_\_(self):  print("x = ", self.x, ", y = ", self.y, ", z = ", self.z) |

When we create two objects out of this class add try to use the ‘+’ operator on them, this is the output obtained.





A type error is raised by the python interpreter as it’s not known how the ‘+’ operator can be applied to objects of type “Point”. This information can be specified by overloading the ‘+’ operator for the class “Point”. Before going through how this can be done, lets take a look at special functions in python.

### Special functions in python

Any class function that begins with a double underscore is a special function in python. The \_\_init\_\_() function that was defined in our previous class “Point” is a special function, and as already discussed this function \_\_init\_\_ gets called every time a new object is created. There are many special functions that python provides. A class can use special functions to make itself compatible with built in function that python provides. In the Point class example above if the \_\_str\_\_() method hasn’t been overloaded then the call to the \_\_str\_\_() method would invoke the \_\_str\_\_() method defined in the object class.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | class Point:  def \_\_init\_\_(self, x = 0, y = 0, z = 0):  self.x = x  self.y = y  self.z = z    # def \_\_str\_\_(self):  # print("x = ", self.x, ", y = ", self.y, ", z = ", self.z) |



Here the built in function print() prints to the console the value that is returned by the \_\_str\_\_() special function which in this case doesn’t seem to provide any useful information. This can be changed by overriding what the \_\_str\_\_method does and what the \_\_str\_\_() method returns to it’s caller.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13 | class Point:  def \_\_init\_\_(self, x = 0, y = 0, z = 0):  self.x = x  self.y = y  self.z = z    def \_\_str\_\_(self):  """This function returns the point object  in a tuple format as string  Example: "(7, 12, 0)" """  #print("x = ", self.x, ", y = ", self.y, ", z = ", self.z)  return "({0}, {1}, {2})".format(self.x, self.y, self.z) |

Observe that calling the object “p1” from the shell makes a call to the definition of the \_\_str\_\_() method in the object class, where as when provided to the print() built in function the print() function makes a call to the \_\_ str\_\_() special method that was implemented by the ‘Point” class and concatenates the value returned by \_\_str\_\_() to the string to be printed onto the console.

  
This new string that is returned by the \_\_str\_\_() method is gives information that is more relevant to what we may want to know about an instance object of the class Point. This is also the same method that is invoked when the built in functions str() or format() is used.



From the above example observe that for str(obj) and format(obj) what is actually done is obj.\_\_str\_\_(), Hence the name “special functions”.

### Overloading the ‘+’ operator in python

For python to know how to apply the ‘+ operator on objects of type Point there needs to be an implementation of the \_\_add\_\_() method in the class definition. Let’s define our \_\_add\_\_() function to return the point object which is the coordinate sum.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  1617  18  19  20  21  22 | class Point:  def \_\_init\_\_(self, x = 0, y = 0, z = 0):  self.x = x  self.y = y  self.z = z    def \_\_str\_\_(self):  """This function returns the point object  in a tuple format as string  Example: "(7, 12, 0)" """  #print("x = ", self.x, ", y = ", self.y, ", z = ", self.z)  return "({0}, {1}, {2})".format(self.x, self.y, self.z)    def \_\_add\_\_(self,other):  """ This method defines how the +  operator is applied on two Point objects  p1 + p2 => p1.\_\_add\_\_(p2) => Point.\_\_add\_\_(p1, p2)"""  x = self.x + other.x  y = self.y + other.y  z = self.z + other.z  return Point(x, y, z) |

The above definition of the user defined type “Point” implements the special function \_\_add\_\_() which is invoked when the ‘+’ operator is used on two point objects. In the shell execution below observe that now as there is an implementation of the \_\_add\_\_() method in the “Point” class, the ‘+’ operator can now be applied to instance objects of type “Point”. The result of this operation is another point as the \_\_add\_\_() method returns a point object that is the result of the summation.



What actually happens here is that when the python interpreter encounters p1 + p2 , it calls p1.\_\_add\_\_(p2), which in turn calls Point.\_\_add\_\_(p1, p2). Just as we have overloaded the ‘+’ operator other operators can be overloaded as well. The table given below lists all the special functions that can be implemented.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Operator** | **Use in an Expression** | **What it means** |
| Addition | x + y | x.\_\_add\_\_(y) |
| Subtraction | x - y | x.\_\_sub\_\_(y) |
| Multiplication | x \* y | x.\_\_mul\_\_(y) |
| Power | x \*\* y | x.\_\_pow\_\_(y) |
| Division | x / y | x.\_\_trudiv\_\_(y) |
| Floor division | x // y | x.\_\_floordiv\_\_(y) |
| modulo | x % y | x.\_\_mod\_\_(y) |
| Bitwise left shift | x << y | x.\_\_lshift\_\_(y) |
| Bitwise right shift | x >> y | x.\_\_rshift\_\_(y) |
| Bitwise AND | x & y | x.\_\_and\_\_(y) |
| Bitwise OR | x | y | x.\_\_or\_\_(y) |
| Bitwise XOR | x ^ y | x.\_\_xor\_\_(y) |
| Bitwise NOT | ~x | x.\_\_invert\_\_(y) |

### Overloading comparison operators in python

The ability to override operators doesn’t end at with just arithmetic operators, python allows overloading comparison operators as well. Let’s take an example of implementing the “greater than or equal to” ( >= ) operator for the class “Point” that was previously defined.

For any two point objects ‘x’ and ‘y’, for python to be able to evaluate the expression “x >= y”, an implementation of the special function \_\_ge\_\_() must be present in the body of the “Point” class definition. Lets define this function to return “True” if the magnitude of ‘x’ from the origin is greater than or equal to the magnitude of ‘y’ from the origin and “False” in the other case. The magnitude of a point (x, y, z) from the origin (0, 0, 0) is given by,



The class “Point” with the implementation of the special function \_\_ge\_\_() is given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  3031  33 | class Point:  def \_\_init\_\_(self, x = 0, y = 0, z = 0):  self.x = x  self.y = y  self.z = z    def \_\_str\_\_(self):  """This function returns the point object  in a tuple format as string  Example: "(7, 12, 0)" """  #print("x = ", self.x, ", y = ", self.y, ", z = ", self.z)  return "({0}, {1}, {2})".format(self.x, self.y, self.z)    def \_\_add\_\_(self,other):  """ This method defines how the +  operator is applied on two Point objects  p1 + p2 => p1.\_\_add\_\_(p2) => Point.\_\_add\_\_(p1, p2)"""  x = self.x + other.x  y = self.y + other.y  z = self.z + other.z  return Point(x, y, z)  def \_\_ge\_\_(self,other):  """ This method defines how the +  operator is applied on two Point objects  p1 >= p2 => p1.\_\_ge\_\_(p2) => Point.\_\_ge\_\_(p1, p2)"""  # Calculate the magnitude of self  self\_magnitude = (self.x \*\* 2) + (self.y \*\* 2) + (self.z \*\* 2)  # Calculate the magnitude of other  other\_magnitude = (other.x \*\* 2) + (other.y \*\* 2) + (other.z \*\* 2)  return self\_magnitude >= other\_magnitude |

For the above class definition lets take a look at some example statements with expressions that involve the “greater than or equal to” comparison operator in the python shell.



The special function that need to be implemented to overload comparison operators are listed in the table below.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Operator** | **Use in an Expression** | **What it means** |
| Less than | x < y | x.\_\_lt\_\_(y) |
| Less than or equal to | x <= y | x.\_\_le\_\_(y) |
| Greater than | x > y | x.\_\_gt\_\_(y) |
| Greater than or equal to | x >= y | x.\_\_ge\_\_(y) |
| Equal to | x == y | x.\_\_eq\_\_(y) |
| Not equal to | x != y | x.\_\_ne\_\_(y) |

## Exercises

Some of the exercise questions in this exercise involve the type definition for rational numbers that is available in the python program given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  2021  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31  32  33  34  35  36  37  38  39  40  41  42  43  44  45  46  47  48  49  50  51  52  53  54  55  56  57  58  59  60  61  62  63  64 | #================================================================  # RationalNumber.py  #================================================================  class RationalNumber:  """  Objects of this class can represent a rational number  """  def \_\_init\_\_(self, n, d):  self.\_\_numerator = n # Private variable  if d != 0:  self.\_\_denominator = d # Private variable  else:  print("It's not a good idea to divide by zero")    def GetNumerator(self):  """ Returns the numerator of the fraction. """  return self.\_\_numerator  def GetDenominator(self):  """ Returns the denominator of the fraction. """  return self.\_\_denominator  def SetNumerator(self, num):  """ Sets the numerator of the fraction to n. """  self.\_\_numerator = num  def SetDenominator(self, den):  """  Sets the denominator to den,unless d  is zero, in which case the method  prints an error message  """  if den != 0:  self.\_\_denominator = den  else:  print("Error: zero denominator!")  def \_\_str\_\_(self):  """  Make a string representation of a Rational object  and return it to the caller  """  num = self.GetNumerator()  den = self.GetDenominator()  return str(num) + "/" + str(den)  # Client code that uses Rational objects  def main():  x = RationalNumber(3, 6)  y = RationalNumber(22, 60)    print("x =", x)  print("y =", y)    x.SetNumerator(12)  x.SetDenominator(23)  y.SetNumerator(13)  y.SetDenominator(29)    print("x =", x)  print("y =", y)  main() |

The output for the above program is given below.



Some of the exercise questions that are given below refer to the Rational Number class that is defined above and the Point class that was previously defined, feel free to refer to them when needed to get through the exercise.

1. Given the definition of the Rational number class, complete the function named add:

**def add(r1, r2):**

**# Details go here**

that returns the rational number representing the sum of its two parameters.

2. Given the definition of the geometric Point class, complete the function named distance:

**def distance(r1, r2):**

**# Details go here**

that returns the distance between the two points passed as parameters.

3. Given the definition of the Rational number class, complete the following function named reduce:

**def reduce(r):**

**# Details go here**

that returns the rational number that represents the parameter reduced to lowest terms; for example, the fraction 10/20 would be reduced to 1/2.

1. What is the purpose of the \_\_init\_\_ method in a class?
2. What is the parameter named self that appears as the first parameter of a method?

6. Given the definition of the Rational number class, complete the following method named reduce:

**class Rational:**

**# Other details omitted here ...**

**# Returns an object of the same value reduced**

**# to lowest terms**

**def reduce(self):**

**# Details go here**

that returns the rational number that represents the object reduced to lowest terms; for example, the fraction 10/20 would be reduced to 1/2.

7. Given the definition of the Rational number class, complete the following method named reduce:

**class Rational:**

**# Other details omitted here ...**

**# Reduces the object to lowest terms**

**def reduce(self):**

**# Details go here**

that reduces the object on whose behalf the method is called to lowest terms; for example, the fraction 10/20 would be reduced to 1/2.

8. Given the definition of the geometric Point class, add a method named distance:

**class Point:**

**# Other details omitted**

**# Returns the distance from this point to the**

**# parameter p**

**double distance(self, p):**

**# Details go here**

that returns the distance between the point on whose behalf the method is called and the parameter p.

# Files and input/output

In this chapter we’ll discuss how python can be used to access files and other input and output capabilities of python. We’ll start by explaining the “File objects”, which includes it’s attributes, built-in functions and built-in methods, then we’ll discuss in brief about standard files, accessing the file system and persistent storage modules.

## File objects

File objects are what is used to access normal files that are on the disk. They can be used to access anything that has the file abstraction which means that other objects ca be accessed using file-like interfaces in the same way the that normal files on the disk are accessed in python. Files are a simply a contiguous sequence of bytes. If data needs to be sent anywhere this will involve a byte stream, where the byte stream could either be in the form of individual bytes or blocks of data.The unix operating system even use files as an underlying architectural interface for communication. In the following sub sections we will be discussing in detail about the built-in functions, built-in methods and attributes for “File objects”.

### Built-in function( open() )

The open() function is one of the built in functions that are provided by python. It can be used to initiate a file input/output process. If the open() function is able to successfully open a file that was requested then it returns a file object which can be used as a handle for subsequent interactions with the file. If the open() function encountered a problem opening the requested file then this results in an error. When such failure occurs python the raises the exception IOERROR. We’ll discuss in detail about errors and exceptions in the next chapter. The general syntax of the open() function is given bellow.

<file object name> = open(<file name>,

access\_mode = <access mode>), buffering = <buffer size>)

Here <file object name> is the name that refers to file object that is returned by the open() function. The <file name> argument is of type string and it has the name of the file that the open function needs to open. <file name> can be a relative or a full path name. access\_mode is an optional parameter that can be specified in the call to the open function, it is also of type string. The caller can use it by specifying a flag that indicates which mode to open the file with. Usually there are three modes that a file is opened with, and they are

* “r” - read
* “w” - write
* “a” - append

If the open() function is used on a file in the “read” then the file must exist or there won’t be a file to read from. If the open() function is used to open a file in the write mode then the file is truncated(all data in the file is deleted) first if the file exists, then the file gets recreated. If a file that does not exist is opened in the write mode then a new file is created and a handle to it is returned to the caller. If the open function is used to open a file in the append mode, then if the file exists the file is opened and the initial position of the file for write access is set to end of file(EOF). In the case that the file didn’t exist when opened in this mode, the file with the provided name is created making it as though it was opened using the write mode. If the access mode is not specified in the call to the open function then the mode is assumed to be “read”.

There are some more modes that the fopen() built in function supports that can work with the open() function. Some of these other modes include,

* “+” - for read and write access
* “b” - for binary access

The other optional argument that can be passed is the “buffering”, which can be used to specify the type of buffering that is requested to be performed during the access to the file. The buffer argument is of type int and can have the following mentioned values,

* 0 - implies that there is no buffering
* 1 - implies line buffering
* >1 - implies a buffered I/O with the specified value for the buffer size

Here as can be seen there is no negative value, which means that the default buffering scheme of the system should be used. In the normal case a buffering value is not provided in which case the system default is used.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Mode of operation** | **Operation to be performed** |
| r | Open to read |
| w | Open to write and truncate if needed |
| a | Open to write, start at the eof and create file if needed |
| r+ | Open for read and write |
| w+ | Open for read and write, w as mentioned above |
| a+ | Open for read and write , a as mentioned above |
| rb | Open for binary read |
| wb | Open for binary write, w as mentioned above |
| ab | Open for binary append, a as mentioned above |
| rb+ | Open for binary read and write, r+ as mentioned above |
| wb+ | Open for binary read and write, w+ as mentioned above |
| ab+ | Open for binary read and write, a+ as mentioned above |

Now lets take a look at some examples of using the built in open() function to obtain files objects as handles that can be used later in the program for reading or writing to the file.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | fileHandle1 = open('/mod/five') # This file gets opened for reading # by default as the access mode is # not specified in the call  fileHandle2 = open('client', 'w') # This file gets opened for writing  fileHandle3 = open('MINER', 'r+') # This file gets opened for both  # Reading and writing  fileHandle4 = open('c:/tell/speak', 'wb') # This binary file is opened for #reading |

In the above examples the names fileHandle1, fileHandle2, fileHandle3, fileHandle4 are assigned references to the file objects that are returned by the open() functions.

### Built-in methods of file objects

After the open() function is used to successfully obtain a handle to the file object associated with the requested file, any subsequent accesses to the file can be done using the file object that was returned by the open() function. The built in methods of a file object can be used to perform operations on the file like reading from the file or writing to a file. There are four different categories of methods for a file which are listed below.

* Input
* Output
* Intra-file movement (movement within a file)
* miscellaneous

**Input**

The following methods are provided by a file object to be used to get input from a file,

* read()
* readline()
* readlines()
* readinto() - Not supported

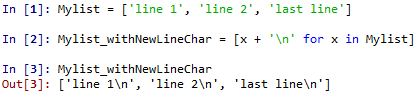
The read() method reads bytes directly into a string object reading up to the number of bytes that was specified if available. In the case that there was no size specified the default value of “-1” for size is assumed in which case the entire file is read till the end. The readline() method returns the next line from the file that was called upon which means it return all bytes until a NEWLINE character is encountered. This NEWLINE character is also included in the string that is returned back to the caller of the readline() method. The readlines() method performs a similar operation, the difference being that it returns list of all the lines in the file where each line in the file is a single string element in the returned list. The readinto() method reads the number of bytes that was specified in the function call and stores it in a writable buffer object, This is the type of object that is returned by the built in function buffer(). buffer() is not supported and so the built in function readinto() is also unsupported.

**Output**

The following methods are provided by a file object to be used to write data to a file,

* write()
* writelines()

The write() method is a built in method who’s functionality is almost the opposite of the read() and readline() methods. The write() method takes either a string that has one to many lines of text or it could take a block of bytes, then it writes this data that it was passed to the file. Just as how readlines() method operated on a list of strings, so does the write line function. It takes a list of strings and writes them to the file. Writelines does not add a NEWLINE character at the end of every string so it’s the responsibility of the programmer to manually add them to the end of each line before calling the writelines() method . A simple way to add the NEWLINE character at the end of every string in the list is shown in the sell execution below.



The writeline() method isn’t provided as it’s functionality would be the same as calling the write method by passing it a single line string that is terminated with a new line character.

**Intra-file movement**

The following methods are provided by a file object to be used to write data to a file,

* seek()
* tell()

The seek() method can be used to move the file pointer to a different position within the file. The seek() method takes the offset in bytes as well as the relative offset position as parameters. The relative offset location can take the following possible values. The value 0 specifies that the distance is taken from the beginning of the file. The offset when measured from the file beginning is called the “absolute offset”. The value 1 specifies that that the relative offset position is the current current location. The value 2 specifies that the relative offset location is the end of the file.

**Other built in methods**

The file object provides some other miscellaneous built in methods, we’ll discuss a few of them in brief.

The close() method is used when the a file is longer needed, it’s used stop the access to the file by closing the file. The file is also closed when the garbage collector deletes it’s file object when the file objects reference count is reduced to zero. An instance of this case is that if there exists only one reference to a file which was created using the assignment below.

fileHandler1 = open(‘x’)

Now if the variable fileHandler1 is assigned another file object to reference, it will no longer refer to the file object that was returned by the above call to the open function on file ‘x’. When this happens there are no more variables that refers to this file object, so it’s reference count becomes zero. The garbage collector deletes all objects who’s reference count is zero, so the file object returned by the open(‘x’) is deleted and the file is closed.

The fileno() method can be used to return a file’s integer file descriptor. The flush() method flushes the internal buffer for the file. The isatty() returns the value 1 in the case that the file is a tty like device, otherwise it returns a 0. The truncate() method can be used to truncate the file to the specified number of bytes or to zero if number of bytes is not specified.

Now let’s take a look at some examples that use built in file objects and methods. The example program that is given below requests the user to enter a file name then it attempts to open the file specified by the user. If it succeeds in opening the file, the readlines() method is used to retrieve all the lines of the file as a list of strings which is stored in a variable, then the file is closed by calling the close method. After the file is closed, all the string in the list are printed to the console.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17 | #====================================================================  # Program to print the contents of a user specified file  #====================================================================  filepath = input("which file: ") # Ask the user for a file path  print(filepath)  fileObj = open(filepath, 'r') # open the requested file  # in read access mode  lines = fileObj.readlines() # Read all lines in the file.  # returns a list of strings    fileObj.close() # close the file  for line in lines: # print elements of the "lines" list  print(line) |

The above program is different from standard file access because all the lines of the file are read from the file and is available in memory before any line is printed on to the console. This becomes a problem when dealing with very large files as the user is faces a large delay(which is not user friendly) in such cases it is better to take the proper way that is to read and display one line at a time. A possible output of the above program is given below.

which file: c:/Users/khalid/Documents/poetry.txt

Not like the brazen giant of Greek fame,

With conquering limbs astride from land to land;

Here at our sea-washed, sunset gates shall stand

A mighty woman with a torch, whose flame

Is the imprisoned lightning, and her name

The example program below solves the problem that we could have had with the above program by printing a line as soon as it is read from the file.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25 | #====================================================================  # Program to print the contents of a user provided file  #====================================================================  filepath = input("which file: ") # Ask the user for a file path.  fileObj = open(filepath, 'r') # Open the requested file  # with read access mode.  EOF\_Flag = 0 # This file can be used to know  # if the end of the files has been  # reached.  while EOF\_Flag != 1: # Print each line of the file  # until EOF\_Flag remains a 0.  nextLine = fileObj.readline() # Read the next line of the file  if nextLine != "": # If end of file is not reached then  print(nextLine) # print the line,  else: # else,  EOF\_Flag = 1 # set the EOF\_Flag to 1  fileObj.close() # close the file |

In this program as we are unaware of when the file would end we use a variable EOF\_Flag, it’s value tells says whether or not the end of the file has been reached. This variable is obviously initially assigned the value 0 (which is represents “false”, meaning the end of the file hasn’t been reached yet). The termination criteria of the while loop depends on the variable EOF\_Flag()

### Built-in attributes

In addition to methods file objects also have some data attributes. These attributes have auxiliary data that are related to the file object that these attributes belong to. File objects have four data attributes and they are

1. file.name : name of the file
2. file.closed : whether the file is closed
3. file.mode : access mode that the file was opened with
4. file.softspace : this is a flag that tells whether an additional space character is required before printing successive data items using the print statement

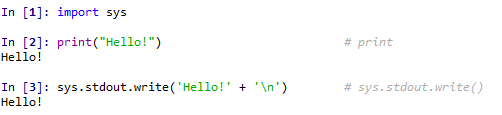
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **File object attribute** | **Description** |
| file.name | The file’s name |
| file.closed | Set to 1 if the file is closed otherwise set to 0 |
| file.mode | Access mode that the file was opened with |
| file.softspace | Set to 1 if space is not explicitly required with print otherwise 1 |

## Standard Files

When a program starts there are three standard files that are made available and they are

1. stdin : The standard input file ( usually keyboard)
2. stdout : The standard output file ( buffered output to the display screen)
3. stderr : The standard error file ( unbuffered output to the display screen)

You may have noticed that here buffered/unbuffered refers to the third argument to the open() function. These names (stdin, stdout, stderr) are taken from the c language naming scheme. These standard files are available when the program starts implies that when the program starts these files are opened for you when the program starts and that you can access them using the provided file handlers. The file handlers for these standard files are made available in the sys module. Once you import the sys module, these file handlers can be accessed with the dot operator as (sys.stdin, sys.stdout, sys.stderr). The print() function outputs to the stdout file.



Notice that the sys.stdout.write() method requires that the newline character is specified, but this is not required with the print method.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | import sys  sys.stdout.write(“Enter your string: “)  my\_string = sys.stdin.readline()  sys.stdout.write(my\_string) |

In the above program observe that we do not explicitly provide the NEWLINE character as the readline() executed on sys.stdin preserves this readline.

## Command-line Arguments

The sys module through sys.argv provides access to the command-line arguments. Command-line arguments are the arguments that are passed to the program in addition to the script name when the program is ran. These arguments are called command-line arguments because in earlier text based environments these arguments were passed using the command-line. In newer GUI based environments this isn’t the case. IDE’s these days usually provide textbox controls which accept values that are in turn passed as command-line arguments to the program when it is started.

“argv” stands for “argument vector” which is a list of strings of all command-line arguments passed. “argc” stands for argument count which isn’t made available in the sys module, but this argument count can be obtained by applying the len() function on the sys.argv list

* sys.argv can be used to access the list of command -line arguments that were passed to the programs
* len(sys.argv) the integer returned is the number of command-line arguments that were passed

Lets take a look at an example program named “arguments.py” that uses command line arguments

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | import sys  print("You're arguments =>", str(sys.argv))  print("Argument count = ", len(sys.argv)) |

Here is a possible invocation of the above program and the output of the invocation

% arguments.py 12 python 24

You're arguments => [‘12’, ‘python’, ‘24’]

Argument count = 4

## The file system

Most of the the access to the file system occurs mainly with the “os” module. It is the primary interface to the operating system’s services and it’s facilities. The os module acts as the front end for the real module that is loaded which is different for the different operating systems like posix for unix, NT for windows, mac for Macintosh, dos for dos, os2 for OS/2.

It’s best if you never import those modules directly. The appropriate module for your operating system is loaded when the os module is imported. Accessing operating system features and facilities through this module is more convenient for programmers and data-scientists as it hides the underlying details. Remember that some features may be unavailable based on the operating system that your using.

In addition to the task of managing processes and process execution environments, the os module performs most of the file system operations which includes removing files, renaming files, traversing the directory tree, managing file accessibility and several other operations which are listed in the tables below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **os module file(file processing)** | **Operation** |
| remove() / unlink() | Delete a file |
| rename() | Rename the file |
| \*stat() | Return statistics of the file |
| symlink() | Create a symbolic link |
| utime() | Update time-stamp |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **os module file(Directories/Folders)** | **Operation** |
| chdir() | Change working directory |
| listdir() | List files in directory |
| getcwd() | Return current working directory |
| mkdir()/mkdirs() | Create directory/directories |
| rmdir()/removedirs() | Remove directory/directories |

There os another module that is available that can perform operations on specific paths. This is the os.path module which is available through the os module. This module includes several functions to manipulate and manage file path name components, for obtaining directory or file information, for making file path inquiries and several other functions most important of which are listed and described in the tables below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **os.path Pathname function(separation)** | **Operation** |
| basename() | Return leaf name removing directory path |
| dirname() | Return directory path removing leaf name |
| join() | Join separate components into a single pathname |
| split() | return (*dirname(), basename()*) tuple |
| splitdrive() | return (*drivename, pathname*) tuple |
| splitext() | return (*filename, extension*) tuple |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **os.path Pathname function(information)** | **Operation** |
| getmtime() | Return the last file’s modification time |
| getatime() | Return the last file’s access time |
| join() | Return file’s size(in bytes) |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **os.path Pathname function(inquiry)** | **Operation** |
| exists() | Returns whether pathname(file or directory) exists |
| isdir() | Returns whether pathname exists and is it a directory |
| isfile() | Returns whether pathname exists and is it a file |
| islink() | Returns whether pathname exists and is it a symbolic link |
| samefile() | Do both the file name provided point to the same file |

## Persistent storage modules

Most of the example programs that we’ve dealt with so far has required user input. After many repetitions of entering the same data as input over and over this starts to get frustrating, also when the user just entered a lot of information it may not be feasible to ask the user to re-enter that data when the program is run again. In this case it is useful to use the persistent storage to store the data for reuse or archive the entered data, so it can be accessed without re-entry. This is one of the several scenarios where data persistence proves to be very useful.

There are some cases where simple disk files that store strings aren’t enough for the task at hand and relational databases might be an overkill for the same task. Persistent storage solves this problem. Most of the persistent storage modules deals only with strings of data, but there are some modules that deal with the persistence of python objects.

### Pickle and marshal modules

Python has several modules that enable a programmer to persist information. Two of them are marshal and pickle. The modules marshal and pickle allow pickling of python objects. “Pickling” is the process where objects more complex than primitive type are are converted to a binary set of bytes that can be stored or transmitted over the network and again be converted back to it’s original form as python object. Pickling is synonymous with the terms “flattening”, “serializing”, “marshalling”

The modules pickle and marshal can be used to flatten objects but they don’t completely provide persistent storage as they don’t give a namespace for the objects and they don’t give concurrent write access to the persistent objects. What these python modules are good for is to pickle python objects so they can be stored and/or transmitted over the network and be reconstructed back to it’s original form. The difference between marshal and pickle is that marshal can only handle simple python objects like numbers, sequences and mappings while pickle on the other hand can handle almost any kind of python object including user defined classes and object instances, recursive objects and objects that are multi-referenced from different places.

Pickle allows storing python objects to files without the extra step of converting them into strings or writing them out as binary files using low level file access methods. What the pickle modules does is it creates a python only binary version of the object which allows the programmer to easily read and write the object without worrying about all the file level details. All that is required is a valid file handle to read or write objects to the disk.

Pickle module has two main functions and they are,

* dump( ) : This function takes as arguments, a file handle and an object and stores this object to the file that was passed
* load( ) : This function is used to load a stored object back to it’s original form that it was in before it was saved to the disk as a file

## Exercises

**1:** *File Filtering.* Display all lines of a file, except those that start with a pound sign ( # ), the comment character for Python, Perl, Tcl, and most other scripting languages.

**2:** *File Access.* Prompt for a number *N* and file *F,* and display the first *N* lines of *F*.

**3:** *File Information.* Prompt for a filename and display the number of lines in that text file.

**4:** *File Access.* Write a "pager" program. Your solution should prompt for a file name, and display the text file 25 lines at a time, pausinLg each time to ask the user to "press a key to continue."

**5:** *Test Scores.* Update your solution to the test scores problems (Exercises 5–3 and 6–4) by allowing a set of test scores be loaded from a file. We leave the file format to your discretion.

**6:** *File Comparison.* Write a program to compare two text files. If they are different, give the line and column numbers in the files where the first difference occurs.

**7:** *Parsing Files.* Windows users: create a program that parses a Windows .ini file. Unix users: create a program that parses the /etc/services file. All other platforms: create a program that parses an system file with some kind of structure to it.

**8:** *Module Introspection.* Extract module attribute information. Prompt the user for a module name (or accept it from the command-line). Then, using dir() and other built-in functions, extract all its attributes, and display their names, types, and values.

**9:** "*PythonDoc.*" Go to the directory where your Python standard library modules are located. Examine each .py file and determine whether a \_\_doc\_\_ string is available for that module. If so, format it properly and catalog it. When your program has completed, it should present a nice list of those modules which have documentation strings and what they are. There should be a trailing list showing which modules do not have documentation strings (the shame list). EXTRA CREDIT: extract documentation for all classes and functions within the standard library modules.

**10:** *Home Finances.* Create a home finance manager. Your solution should be able to manage savings, checking, money market, certificate of deposit (CD), and similar accounts. Provide a menu-based interface to each account as well as operations such as deposits, withdrawals, debits, and credits. An option should be given to a user to remove transactions as well. The data should be stored to file when the user quits the application (but randomly during execution for backup purposes).

**11:** *Web Site Addresses.*

(a)Write a URL bookmark manager. Create a text-driven menu-based application which allows the user to add, update, or delete entries. Entries include a site name, Website URL address, and perhaps a one-line description (optional). Allow search functionality so that a search "word" looks through both names and URLs for possible matches. Store the data to a disk file when the user quits the application, and load up the data when the user restarts.

(b)Upgrade your solution to part (a) by providing output of the bookmarks to a legible and syntactically correct HTML file (.htm or .html) so that users can then point their browser to this output file and be presented with a list of their bookmarks. Another feature to implement is allowing the creation of "folders" to allow grouping of related bookmarks. EXTRA CREDIT: Read the literature on regular expressions and the Python re module. Add regular expression validation of URLs that users enter into their database.

**12:** *Users and Passwords.*

(a)Do Exercise 7-5, which keeps track of usernames and passwords. Update your code to support a "last login time." See the documentation for the time module to obtain timestamps for when users "login" to the system. Also, create the concept of an "administrative" user which can dump a list of all the users, their passwords (you can add encryption on top of the passwords if you wish), and their last login times. The database should be stored to disk, one line at a time, with fields delimited by colons ( : ), i.e., "joe:boohoo:953176591.145," for each user. The number of lines in the file will be the number of users which are part of your system.

(b)Further update your example such that instead of writing out one line at a time, you "pickle" the entire database object and write that out instead. Read the documentation on the pickle module to find out how to "flatten" or "serialize" your object, as well as how to perform I/O using picked objects. With the addition of this new code, your solution should take up fewer lines than your solution in part (a).

**13:** *Command-line arguments.*

(a)What are they, and why might they be useful?

(b)Write code to display the command-line arguments which were entered.

**14:** *Logging Results.* Convert your calculator program (Exercise 5-6) to take input from the command-line, i.e., % calc.py 1 + 2 Output the result only. Also, write each expression and result to a disk file. Issuing a command of…

% calc.py print

reset/truncated. Here is an example session:

% calc.py 1 + 2

3

% calc.py 3 ^ 3

27

% calc.py print

1 + 2

3

3 ^ 3

27

% calc.py print

%

**15:** *Copying Files.* Prompt for two file names (or better yet, use command-line arguments). The contents of the first file should be copied to the second file.

**16:** *Text Processing.* You are tired of seeing lines on your e-mail wrap because people type lines which are too long for your mail reader application. Create a program to scan a text file for all lines longer than 80 characters. For each of the offending lines, find the closest word before 80 characters and break the line there, inserting the remaining text to the next line (and pushing the previous next line down one). When you are done, there should no longer be lines longer than 80 characters.

**17:** *Text Processing.* Create a crude and elementary text file editor. Your solution is menu-driven, with the following options: (1) create file [prompt for file name and any number of lines of input], (2) display file [dump its contents to the screen], (3) edit file (prompt for line to edit and allow user to make changes), (4) save file, and (5) quit.

**18:** *Searching Files.* Obtain a byte value (0-255) and a file name. Display the number of times that byte appears in the file.

**19:** *Generating Files.* Create a sister program to the previous problem. Create a binary data file with random bytes, but one particular byte will appear in that file a set number of times. Obtain the following three values: (1) a byte value (0–255), (2) the number of times that byte should appear in the data file, and (3) the total number of bytes that make up the data file. Your job is to create that file, randomly scatter the request byte across the file, and to ensure that there are no duplicates and that the file contains exactly the number of occurrences that byte was requested for, and that the resulting data file is exactly the size requested.

# Errors and Exceptions

## What are errors and exceptions

Errors and exceptions are part of a programmers life, before we get into the details, lets look at what errors and exceptions are.

**Errors**

When it comes to software development errors could either be syntactical or logical.

Syntactical errors occur when there is an issue with the programs construct in this case the compiler cant compile the code and the interpreter cant execute the statement with the syntax error

Once the program is syntactically correct the only errors that remain in the program are logical errors. The causes of these are

* Lack of input to the program
* Invalid input
* Not being ale to calculate the desired result based on the input

Logical errors are sometimes also referred to as domain or range failures. When an error is detected by the python interpreter it indicates that it reached a point in the program flow where execution is no longer possible.This is the point where exceptions come in.

**Exceptions**

Exceptions in python are actions that are taken outside of the normal control flow. They occur in two phases. The first being that an error causes an exception and the second phase being the detection of the exception and the possible resolution of it.

The first phase takes place when an exceptional condition occurs. When this happens the interpreter detects the error and recognizes the exceptional condition. This I when the interpreter “raises” an exception. The words triggers”, “throws” or “generates” can be used and it is the way that the interpreter makes it know that an exceptional condition has occurred. Python also lets the programmers raise exception and how ever this exception was raised either by the programmer or the interpreter it sends a signal that there was an exceptional condition and takes the program of the normal control flow this is the second phase of an exception where the programmer can specify how to handle the error.

The second phase is the exception handling part. When an exception is raised the exception can be handled in several ways like ignoring the error, simply logging the error, performing corrective measures, etc. Each of these methods of handling the error takes a different path in the programs control flow. Here the advantage of error handling is that the programmer can dictate how an error should be handled.

Exceptions are mostly caused by unforeseen possibilities that happen(mostly through user input). Python a language that supports raising and handling exceptions help the programmer by giving them a way to handle these unforeseen possibilities. This increases a programs robustness as the logical errors are handled at runtime.

## Exceptions in python

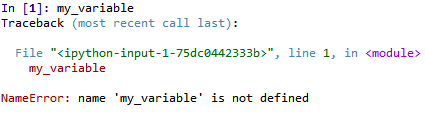
you might have already encountered some exceptions as you were trying out the examples and exercises in this book. Recall that a “traceback” notice was printed to the screen along with as much information that the interpreter can provide. This notice includes

* Name of the error
* Reason for the error
* Could also include the exact or near line number

All errors regardless of whether they are syntactical or logical are caused by behavioral incompatibility with the python interpreter and they cause errors to be raised. Let’s take a look at some of pythons exceptions below.

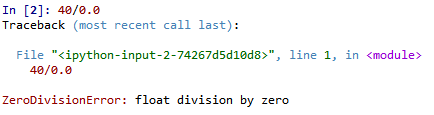
**NameError : Trying to access a variable that is not declared**

This exception is raised when there was a access to a variable that wasn’t initialized yet. The accessed identifier was not found in the symbol table. Take a look at the example below.



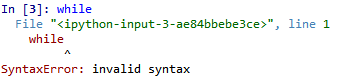
**ZeroDivisionError : Division operation with a numeric zero**

Any numeric division by zero raises this error. An example is given below.



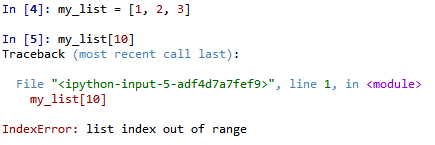
**SyntaxError : A syntax error**

These are the only type of errors that occur at run-time.The indicate that there is some part of the program that does not adhere to pythons syntax definition. An example is given below.



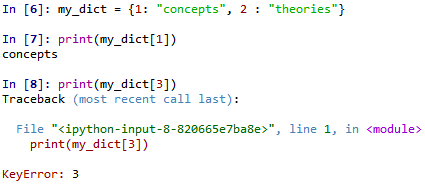
**IndexError : Requesting an index that is out of range on a sequence object**

Raised when an index that is outside the available range is requested for a sequence typed object. An example is given below.



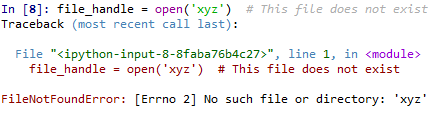
**KeyError : Requesting a dictionary key that does not exist**

Keys are required when accessing data from mapping types like dictionaries, and the values from the mapping type can not be retrieved if the key is incorrect or nonexistent. In such cases a KeyError is raised. An example is given below.



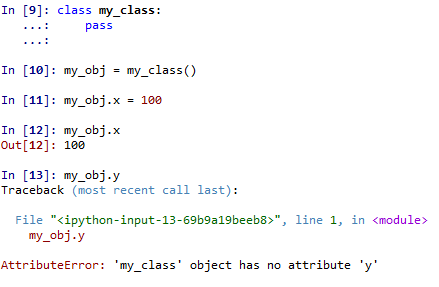
**IOError : An input or output error**

An IOError exception is raised on any kind of input or output error like trying to access a file that does not exist . An example is given below.



**AttributeError : Attempting to access an unknown attribute of an object**

Observe that in the example below when an uninitialized instance variable is accessed the python interpreter raises an AttributeError exception .



## Detecting and handling exceptions

Exceptions in python are detected using the “try” statement. The body(code suite) of the try statement is always monitored for exceptions. The try statement comes in two forms and they are,

1. Try-except
2. Try-finally

These two types of try statements are mutually exclusive which means python doesnt allow using them as a hybrid. The try-except statement detects and also handles an exception the try is responsible for detecting an exception and the except part of the statement is responsible for handling the exception. This statement can have one or more except clauses and can also include an else clause which is the case that no error occurred. The try-finally statement has one try clause that covers the code that requires monitoring of exceptions and and exactly one finally clause which does not allow handling the exception but can only perform some form of obligatory cleanup.

**The try-except statement**

The try-except statement syntax allows the programmer to define a section of code that needs to be monitored for exceptions and also a section of code that handles the cases when exceptions occur. The syntax of the try-except statement is given below.

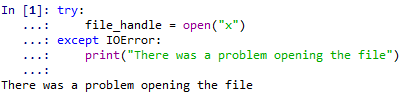
try :

<try suite> # Monitor for exceptions here

except <exception>:

<except suite> # Handle exceptions here

Lets take a look again at the example that we previously discussed by applying the try-except statement to it

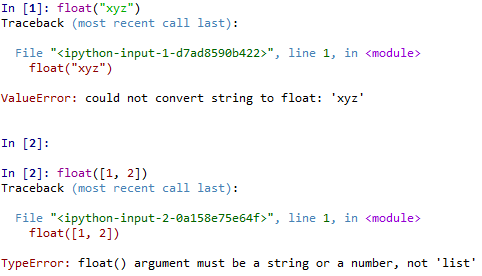


Observe that the error does not occur like in the last example. In actuality the python interpreter does raise an “IOError” exception at line 2 as the file x does not exist and there is an attempt to open the file, but as this code suite is monitored for exceptions, as soon as an exception is raised the exception is handled by transferring the flow of control to the code suite of the appropriate except clause.All the remaining code in the code suite of the try block is skipped, but in this case there was no code skipped as there were no more instructions in the code suite of the try clause.

Once the error is raised the search for the appropriate handler begins and if an appropriate handler(except clause) is found the flow of control is passed to the body of the handler. If there wasn’t an appropriate handler found in the search then the exception is passed to the caller’s level to handle the exception this means that the exception is passed to the stack frame that is immediately preceeding the current frame. If again no appropriate handler was found then the exception is again passed to its caller. In this way is the top most level is reached then the python interpreter considers the exception to be unhandled and the python interpreter displays the usual traceback notice before exiting.

**Wrapping a built in function using try-except**

Lets go through an interactive example that starts simply with just detecting an error and continuously improve on what we have to make it more robust. Our example involves the float( ) function which can convert any numeric type to a floating point value. The float( ) function can also convert a number that is in it’s string representation( like the string “100”) to it’s float equivalent. The float( ) does not accept bad input like in the below examples below.



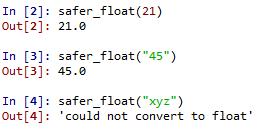
Note that in the first instruction the argument is a string which is an acceptable type but the string was not a valid number so the ValueError exception was raised. In the second instruction the argument was not of the right type so the TypeError was raised. The exercise that we’re going to go through involves making the call to float( ) function more “safe”, which means that we want to ignore the cases that turn up error as they are not relevant to our task of converting strings into floating point number and the cases are not severe enough that the python interpreter has to abandon the execution. To accomplish this objective we will use a wrapper function with the help of the try-except statement and we’ll call this function “safer\_float( )”. In our first iteration we’ll handle the ValueError exception as this is one of the common exceptions that the float function results in.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | def safer\_float(object):  try:  return float(object) # return the float object  except ValueError:  pass # do nothing |
|  |  |

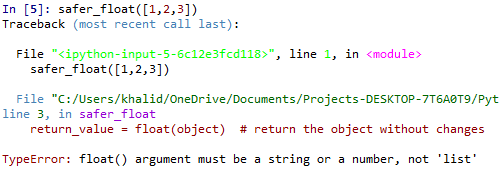
Here in our first iteration we solved the problem of making the float function safer as now with the safer\_float( ) function the program will no longer abruptly halt. Here there is a ValueError exception raised the exception is detected but as there is nothing done in the except clause there is no handling done, which means that we are just ignoring the error. One problem here is that in the case of an error there is no value returned back to the caller of the function that means a “None” is returned to the caller. This prevents the caller from knowing if there was anything wrong during the executing the function. Let’s change the above code so we can indicate to the caller that there was some error in the case that there were.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | def safer\_float(object):  try:  return\_value = float(object)  except ValueError:  return\_value = "could not convert to float"  return return\_value |
|  |  |

Lets try calling the function we just designed with different arguments.



A problem with the function that just designed is that it is able to handle the ValueError exceptions if raised but it can’t handle TypeError exceptions that would be raised if an object other than a string or numeric type is passed.



Lets discuss how to overcome this problem.

**try-except statements with multiple except clauses**

We’ve already introduced try-except statements of the following kind with only one except clause, this construct is mostly used to handle exceptions of type “Exception”.

try :

<try suite> # Monitor for exceptions here

except <exception>:

<except suite> # Handle exceptions here

Try-except statements also allow chaining together multiple except clauses together to handle multiple different types of exceptions and handling the exceptions differently based on what kind of exception was raised. The syntax for try-except statements with multiple except statements is given below.

try :

<try suite> # Monitor for exceptions here

except <exception1>:

<except suite> # Handle exception1 here

except <exception2>:

<except suite> # Handle exceptions2 here

.

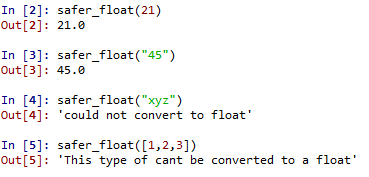
.

.

Let us apply what we have just learned to make the safer\_float( ) function able to handle exceptions of type TypeError. Take a look at the updated code below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | def safer\_float(object):  try:  return\_value = float(object)  except ValueError:  return\_value = "could not convert to float"  except TypeError:  return\_value = "This type of cant be converted to a float"  return return\_value |
|  |  |

Lets try calling the function we just designed with different arguments.



Observe that the function now handles the TypeError exception by returning a predefined string.

**except statements with multiple exception types**

Except clause can be used to handle multiple exception types. These type of except clauses require the set of exception types to be handled be provided as a tuple. The syntax of such except clause is given below.

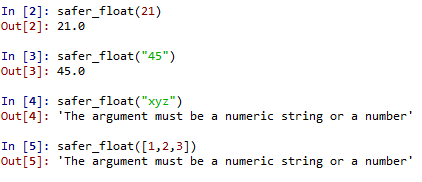
except (<exception1>, <exception2>, …):

<except suite> # Handle those exceptions here

The safer\_float( ) function can be re-written as follows.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | def safer\_float(object):  try:  return\_value = float(object)  except (ValueError, TypeError) :  return\_value = "The argument must be a numeric string or a number"  return return\_value |
|  |  |

Lets try calling the function we just designed with different arguments.



**try-except statements with no named exceptions**

This type of try-except statements is one that does not specify the name of the exception and it’s syntax is show below.

try :

<try suite> # Monitor for exceptions here

except :

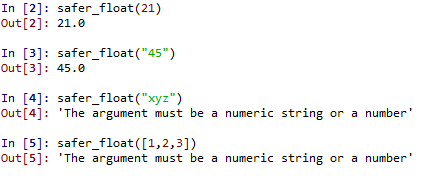
<except suite> # Handle all exceptions here

Even though this approach to using the try-except statement would catch almost all exception it is highly recommended never to use this approach as this reveals nothing regarding the root cause of the occurring exceptions. It is better for the programmer to be have code the helps the programmer to investigate and discover what type of errors can occur to prevent them in the future.

Let’s look at our safer\_float( ) function with this kind of except clause.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | def safer\_float(object):  try:  return\_value = float(object)  except :  return\_value = "The argument must be a numeric string or a number"  return return\_value |
|  |  |

Lets try calling the function we just designed with different arguments.



**The else statement**

This type of try-except statements is one that does not specify the name of the exception and it’s syntax is show below.

<try-except statement>

else:

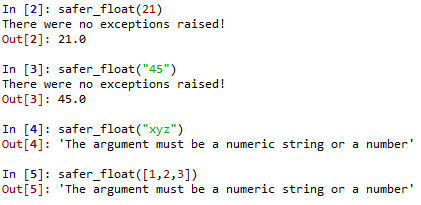
<block that gets executed if there is no error>

Even though this approach to using the try-except statement would catch almost all exception it is highly recommended never to use this approach as this reveals nothing regarding the root cause of the occurring exceptions. It is better for the programmer to be have code the helps the programmer to investigate and discover what type of errors can occur to prevent them in the future.

Let’s look at our safer\_float( ) function with this kind of except clause.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | def safer\_float(object):  try:  return\_value = float(object)  except (ValueError, TypeError) :  return\_value = "The argument must be a numeric string or a number"  else:  print("There were no exceptions raised!")  return return\_value |
|  |  |

Lets try calling the function we just designed with different arguments.



**Exceptional arguments**

When exceptions are raised additional arguments can be passed along with them to the exception handler. The purpose of these additional arguments is to provide more aid to the exception handler. Even though exception arguments are completely optional, standard built in exceptions provide at least one argument which is an error string that indicates what the cause of the exception is. To access the exception argument a variable is required to hold the argument, this argument is provided on the except header and follows the exception type that is being handled. The syntax for adding arguments to the except clause is given below.

# For a single exception

except <exception>, <argument>:

<except suite> # Handle exceptions here

# For a multiple exceptions

except (<exception1>, <exception2>, …), <argument>:

<except suite> # Handle exceptions here

Unless the exception that was raised was a string exception. The “argument” here is an instance of a class that contains diagnostic information from the code that caused the error. The exception arguments are in a tuple which is an attribute of the exception object that was instantiated. In the general syntax that is shown above, “argument” is an instance of the exception class.

When it comes to most of the standard built-in exceptions(meaning exception that inherit from StandardError class), the tuple has a string that is used to help specify the cause of the error

**try-finally statements**

These statements differ from try-except statements as they don’t handle the raised exceptions. Their purpose is to ensure consistent behaviour regardless of the whether there was an exception raised. the “finally” suite executes regardless of whether there was an error raised in the “try” suite. The syntax of the try-finally statement is shown below.

try :

<try suite> # Monitor for exceptions here

finally <exception>:

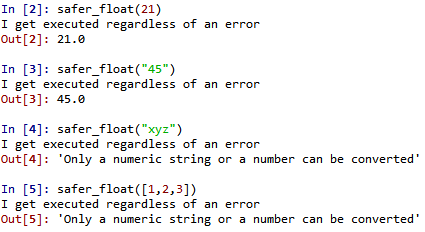
<finally suite> # Execute regardless of exception

In the case that there was an exception that was raised in the try suite the control flow is immediately passed to the finally suite. When the finally suite has completed execution the exception is raised again to be handled ny the higher level. This is the reason that it is very common to see try-finally statements embedded within try-except statements.

Let’s look at our safer\_float( ) function with the try-finally statement.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10 | def safer\_float(object):  return\_value = 0  try:  try:  return\_value = float(object)  finally :  print("I get executed regardless of an error")  except (ValueError, TypeError):  return\_value = "Only a numeric string or a number can be converted"  return return\_value |

Lets try calling the function we just designed with different arguments.



**List of standard exception in python**

The table below lists and describes pythons standard exceptions.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Exception Name** | **Description** |
| Exception | Base class for all exception classes |
| StopIteration | Exception raised when an iterators next( ) method doesnt point to an object |
| SystemExit | Sys.exit( ) function method raises this exception |
| StandardError | This is the base class for all of the built in exceptions excluding excluding StopIteration and SystemExit. |
| ArithmeticError | This is the base class for all errors that occur during a numeric calculation |
| OverflowError | When a calculation exceeds maximum limit that a numeric type can handle this exception is raised |
| FloatingPointError | Raised if a floating point calculation fails |
| ZeroDivisionError | Raised if a division by zero or modulo by zero takes place |
| AssertionError | Raised if an assert statement fails |
| AttributeError | Raised when accessing an attribute of an object fails |
| EOFError | Raised in the case where there is no input from the input( ) function and the end of the file is reached |
| ImportError | Raised on failure to import a module |
| KeyboardInterrupt | Raised if user interrupts the programs execution. This us usually done by pressing ctrl + c |
| LookupError | This is the base class for all look up errors |
| IndexError | Raised when an index could not be found when indexing a sequence typed object |
| KeyError | Raised when the indicated key was not found when search a dictionary type object |
| NameError | Raised when a name could not be found in the local or global namespace |
| UnboundLocalError | Raised when trying to access a local variable of a function that does not have a value assigned to it yet |
| EnvironmentError | This is the base class for all of the exceptions that occur outside the python environment |
| IOError | Raised when an I/O operation fails like when the open function can not find the specified file |
| SyntaxError | Raised when the program is inconsistent with python’s grammatical syntax |
| Indentation error | Raised when there are problems with the indentation of some instructions |
| SystemError | Raised when the python interpreter finds an internal error. The interpreter does not exit when this error is raised |
| TypeError | Raised if an function or an operation is carried out for data type that it is not designed to handle |
| ValueError | Raised when a built in function for a data type has the valid type of arguments but the arguments have invalid values provided. |
| RuntimeError | Raised if the error that was generated does not fall into any category. |
| NotImplementedError | Raised if the abstract method that was required to be implemented in an inherited class wasn’t implemented |

## Raising exceptions

In whatever we have discussed so the python interpreter was responsible for raising the exceptions. These exceptions are raised when there is an error during execution. When a programmer is writing an API there may be some cases where the programmer wants to raise an exception on an erroneous input. Python allows a programmer to explicitly raise exceptions using the raise statement.

The raise statement is very flexible when it comes to the arguments that it supports. This makes it allow a large number of different formats. The raise statements general syntax is given below.

raise [Exception [, args[,traceback]]]

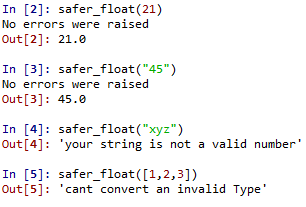
Here the first argument which is “Exception” is the name of the exception that is to be raised. If it is present then it should either be a string, object or a class. The “Exception” argument is required if the the other arguments are present. The second expression is the args( which are parameter and values) for the exception is optional and is either a single object or a tuple of objects.In the case that an exception is detected the exception argument is always returned as a tuple. In the case that “args” is a single object then the tuple consists of just that one object and if “args” is tuple of objects then the tuple is is the tuple of arguments that are passed to the handler. The majority of cases is that single objects passed will have a string that indicates what the cause of the error was. When a tuple is passed the usual case is an error string, error number and an error location(which file).

The last argument here which is “traceback” is an optional argument that is rarely used and is the traceback object that is used for the exception. This argument is useful if the programmer wants to re-raise an exception. Arguments can be left absent by using the value ”None”.

Lets take a look an example of using the raise statement in a simple python program given below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  1314  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24 | def safer\_float(object):  return\_value = 0  try:  if ((type(object) != str and type(object) != int)) :  ex = Invalid\_type("Incorrect type", "cant convert an invalid Type")  raise ex  return\_value = float(object) # not executed if exception raised  except Invalid\_type:  return\_value = ex.error  except ValueError:  return\_value = "your string is not a valid number"  else:  print("No errors were raised")  return return\_value  class Invalid\_type(Exception):  def \_\_init\_\_(self, message, errors):  # Call base class constructor with parameters it requires  super().\_\_init\_\_(message)  # custom code...  self.error = errors |

Lets try testing our code using different arguments below.



## Assertions

Assertions in python re predicates that are required to evaluate to the boolean value “true” or 1 otherwise and exception is raised to indicate that an assertion was evaluated to be “false” or 0. they are used for diagnostic and testing purposes. Assertions in python are similar to the “assert” macros in the c language.

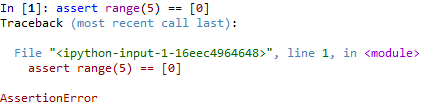
The easiest way to understand assertions in python is to understand them as an imaginary “raise-if-not” statement which means an expression is evaluated and if the result is false then an exception is raised. The exception raised if an assertion is evaluated to be false is the AssertionError. Assertions are used in python with the assert statement, which was introduced in python 1.5 .

**assert statement**

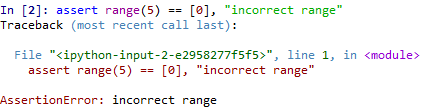
Lets take a look at a few examples of the assert statement below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14 | #=======================================================  # All these assertions evaluate to true  #=======================================================  assert 1 != 0  assert range(5) == [0, 1, 2, 4, 5]  assert 1  assert len(['this string', 2]) < 15  #=======================================================  # All these assertions raise an AssertionError exception  #=======================================================  assert 1 != 1  assert range(5) == [0]  assert 0  assert len(['this string', 2]) > 15 |

AssertionError that is raised can be handled just as other exceptions can be handled for example by using the try-except statement, but when they are not handled the interpreter raises a traceback notice and terminates the program as shown in the example below.



Just as we provided an argument to our raise statement in the previous section we can provide a argument to our assertion as shown below.



Now lets use a try-except statement to catch the AssertionException in the code below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | try:  assert (2 + 2) == 5  except AssertionError:  print("2 + 2 is not 5") |

In the above program the assertion is evaluated to 0 therefore the interpreter raises the AssertionError which is caught and handled in the except suite.

For a better understanding of how the assertion statement works lets design a function that performs the same function as the assert statement.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3 | def function\_assert(expr, args=None):  if \_\_debug\_\_ and not expr:  raise AssertionError |

The first if statement here makes sure that the syntax of the assert statement is preserved(expr must be an expression) The second part here evaluates the expression and raises the exception if the result of the expression was a zero. Under normal circumstances the built in variable \_\_debug\_\_ is 1 and 0 in the case that optimization is requested.

## Exercises

**1:** Raising Exceptions. Which of the following can RAISE exceptions during program execution? Note that this question does not ask what may CAUSE exceptions.

a) the user

b) the interpreter

c) the program

d) all of the above

e) only (b) and (c)

f) only (a) and (c) \

**2:** Raising Exceptions. Referring to the list in the problem above, which could raise exceptions while running within the interactive interpreter?

**3:** Keywords. Name the keyword(s) which is(are) used to raise exceptions.

**4:** Keywords. What is the difference between **try-except** and **try-finally?**

**5:** Exceptions. Name the exception that would result from executing the following pieces of Python code from within the interactive interpreter (refer back to Table 10.2 for a list of all built-in exceptions):

a)

>>> **if** 3 < 4 **then: print** '3 IS less than 4!'

b)

>>> aList = ['Hello', 'World!', 'Anyone', 'Home?']

>>> **print** 'the last string in aList is:', aList[len(aList)]

c)

>>> x

>>> x = 4 % 0

e)

**>>> import** math

>>> i = math.sqrt(-1)

**6:** Improving open(). Create a wrapper for the open() function. When a program opens a file successfully, a file handle will be returned. If the file open fails, rather than generating an error, return None to the callers so that they can open files without an exception handler.

**7:** Exceptions. What is the difference between Python pseudo-code snippets (a) and (b)? Answer in the context of statements A and B, which are part of both pieces of code.

a)

**try:**

statement\_A

**except** …:

…

**else:**

statement\_B

b)

**try:**

statement\_A

statement\_B

**except** …:

…

**8:** Improving raw\_input(). In the beginning of this chapter, we presented a "safe" version of the float() built-in function to detect and handle two different types of exceptions which float() generates. Likewise, the raw\_input() function can generate two different exceptions, either EOFError or KeyboardInterrupt on end-of-file (EOF) or cancelled input, respectively. Create a wrapper function, perhaps safe\_input(); rather than raising an exception if the user entered EOF (^D in Unix or ^Z in DOS) or attempted to break out using ^C, have your function return None that the calling function can check for.

**9:** Improving math.sqrt(). The math module contains many functions and some constants for performing various mathematics-related operations. Unfortunately, this module does not recognize or operate on complex numbers, which is the reason why the cmath module was developed. Rather than suffering the overhead of importing an entire module for complex numbers which you do not plan on using in your application, you want to just use the standard arithmetic operators which work fine with complex numbers, but really want just a square root function that can provide a complex number result when given a negative argument. Create a function, perhaps safe\_sqrt(), which wraps math.sqrt(), but is smart enough to handle a negative parameter and return a complex number with the correct value back to the caller

# Pandas

Pandas is one of the most popular python libraries that is used for data analysis and manipulation. It gives a very highly optimized performance. In this chapter we focus on getting a proper understanding of the basics of this python library.It’s recommended that you try the examples in this chapter yourself.

## Creating, reading and writing

In this section you will learn how to create your own data and also how to work with already existing data. To use this pandas library in a python program import the pandas module. Remember before installing make sure you have the pandas module installed. The pandas module module is imported and renamed with the line of code shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | import pandas as pd |

### Creating data

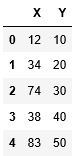
There are two main object types in Pandas and they are “DataFrame” and “Series”. Lets go through both of them.

**DataFrame**

A DataFrame in Pandas can be considered a table. It has an array of entries, each one having a value that corresponds to a column and a record. Let’s take a look at a single data frame shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1 | pd.DataFrame({'X': [12, 34, 74, 38, 83], 'Y': [10, 20, 30, 40, 50]}) |

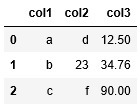
The DataFrame constructor that is invoked in the above code returns the table that is shown below.



For clarification, the entry at (0, “X”) is 12 and the entry at (0, “Y”) is 10. The entries of a DataFrame object are not just limited to numeric types they can also be strings like in the example shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1 | pd.DataFrame({'col1': ["a", "b", "c"], 'col2': ["d", 23, "f"], 'col3': [12.5, 34.76, 90]}) |

The DataFrame constructor that is invoked in the above code returns the table that is shown below.

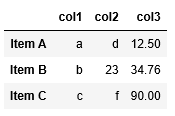


In the above lines of code we generate the DataFrames using the constructor pd.DataFrame(). This constructor takes a dictionary with keys as columns and the value of the keys as a list of entries, as an argument. This is the standard method for generating DataFrames using pandas and it is the only one that you will most likely use.

The dictionary keys are used to name the columns of the DataFrame.The list of rows labels(also called indexes) are in ascending order from 0 as 0, 1, 2, ans so on. This method of labeling the indexes is fine in many cases but there may be cases where a user defined index is provided in which case the index optional parameter can be used as shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1 | pd.DataFrame({'col1': ["a", "b", "c"], 'col2': ["d", 23, "f"], 'col3': [12.5, 34.76, 90]}, index = ["Item A", "Item B", "Item C"]) |

The DataFrame constructor that is invoked in the above code returns the table that is shown below.

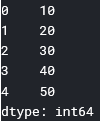


**Series**

A series object is simply put, a sequence of values. If a DataFrame object is considered to be a table then a Series object can be considered to be a list. A series object can be created using the Series constructor as shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | x = pd.Series([10, 20, 30, 40, 50])  x |

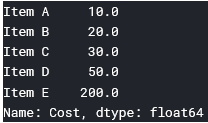
The Series constructor that is invoked in the above code returns the Series object that is shown below.



A Series object is similar to one column of a DataFrame object and therefore row values can be assigned the using same way used in DataFrames, with the index optional parameter. A series object doesnt have column name but the entire Series object can be given a single name. Take a look at the instruction shown below.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2 | x = pd.Series([10, 20, 30, 50.0, 200], index = ["Item A", "Item B", "Item C", "Item D" , "Item E"], name = "Cost")  x |

The Series constructor that is invoked in the above code returns the Series object that is shown below.



Series objects are very much related to DataFrames as DataFrames can be considered as a collection of Series.

### Reading and writing data files

Creating DataFrames and Series yourself is handy but data scientists rarely work with data that they created. The usual cases is working with data that already exists. Structured data can be stored in many different file formats but one of the most common file formats data scientists use is the csv file which stands for “comma separated values” lets look at an example of how a csv file looks like

Object A,Object B,Object C,

78,45,12,

65,13,73,

90,15,23

Observe that all the values are separated by a comma. The first line consists of all the column names. The remaining rows are the values of each record and every record has entries for every column specified in the first line. You may also encounter csv files with the column list skipped, in which case the csv file only consists of a list of records

Lets now leave these data sets that we have made aside and start working with real world data sets. The data set that we will be using here can be downloaded through this link <https://www.kaggle.com/khalidative/crimeanalysis>.

If you have downloaded the dataset, then you will have available to you a set of csv files named

* crimes\_by\_district
* crimes\_by\_district\_rt
* crimes\_by\_state
* crimes\_by\_state\_rt

The csv we will be working with is the fourth one named “crimes\_by\_state\_rt.csv”. The table below describes the fields of this data set that we will be working with.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Feature Name** | **Feature Type** | **Feature Description** |
| STATE/UT | String | Name of the state or union territory(In upper case) |
| Year | Integer | The year |
| Murder | Integer | Number of "Murder" cases |
| Assault on women | Integer | Number of "Assault in women" cases |
| Kidnapping and Abduction | Integer | Number of "Kidnapping and Abduction" cases |
| Dacoity | Integer | Number of "Dacoity" cases |
| Robbery | Integer | Number of "Robbery" cases |
| Arson | Integer | Number of "Arson" cases |
| Hurt | Integer | Number of "Hurt" cases |
| Prevention of atrocities (POA) Act | Integer | Number of cases of violating the "Prevention of atrocities" act |
| Protection of Civil Rights (PCR) Act | Integer | Number of cases of violating the "Protection of civil rights act" act |
| Other Crimes Against SCs | Integer | Number of other crimes committed against scheduled castes |

Lets start by loading the data in the csv file to a DataFrame object we can do that using the read\_csv( ) function of the Pandas library as shown below. This function takes as an argument the name of the csv file.

>>> dataset = pd.read("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")

The shape attribute of the data frame can be used to know the size of the data frame lets find out the size of the DataFrame that we just imported.

>>> dataset = pd.read("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")

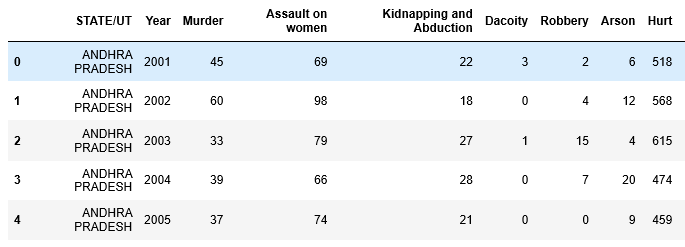
>>> dataset.shape

Here the value of dataset.shape is a tuple (420, 12) which means that the data frame has 420 rows and 12 columns. The contents of the DataFrame we now have can be examined using the head function, which fetches the first five records of the DataFrame.

>>> dataset = pd.read("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")

>>> dataset

Here dataset.head( ) return the first five lines of the DataFrame shown below.



The read\_csv( ) function that Pandas provides has several optional parameters one of which is index\_col(takes a numeric value indicating which column). It can be used to provide a column number(starting form 0) to be used as the index column of the dataset instead of using the standard 0, 1, 2, …

**Writing a DataFrame to a file**

Pandas provides a function to\_csv(“<file name>”) to write a DataFrame to the disk as csv file. To write the DataFrame object to the disk we use the to\_csv function as shown below.

>>> dataset = pd.read("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")

>>> dataset.shape

>>> dataset.head()

>>> dataset.to\_csv("saved\_dataframe.csv")

## Indexing, selecting and Assigning

Selecting specific columns, rows, or specific data points from a DataFrame or a Series is a very common step before performing the planned operation, so what you’ll learn here is how to select data points that are relevant to your operation easily and effectively.

### Naive approach

Python provides its native approach to accessing python objects and this methods are also applicable to instance objects of the Pandas library. Take the DataFrame that we created in the previous section.

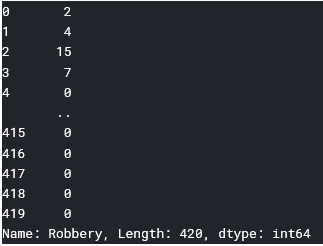
>>> dataset = pd.read("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")

>>> dataset



Python allows accessing properties of objects using the standard method to access object attribute. An example of this is to access the “name” attribute of the object “student” we use “student.name”. Columns of a pandas DataFrame can be accessed in the same way. Now from our DataFrame the Robbery column can be accessed as follows.

>>> dataset.Robbery



The values of python dictionary can be accessed using the indexing operator([ ]). This method can also be used to access the columns of a DataFrame object as shown below

>>> dataset["Robbery"]

#### 

Observe that this returns the same result and this method to retrieve a column is better than the previous method of accessing a column as an attribute, because column names with a space character can’t be accessed this way. The pandas Series is like a dictionary as specific values can be accessed using another indexing operator as follows.

>>> dataset["Robbery"][0]



>>> dataset["Robbery"][0]



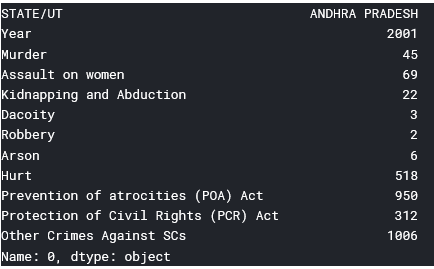
Both these methods of selection, the attribute selection and indexing operator are easy for beginners familiar to the python syntax to pickup and use, but these methods are not sufficient when it comes to more advanced indexing problems. Pandas provides it’s own set of access operators and they are,

1. iloc ( Index based selection)
2. loc (label based selection)

### Index based selection

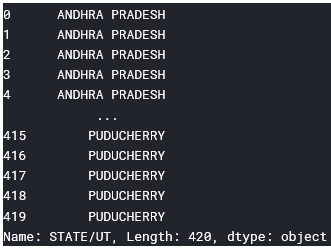
In this indexing paradigm that Pandas provides, data selection is performed based on the numerical position of the data in the DataFrame or Series. iloc is the implementation of this indexing paradigm. Now lets use iloc to select the first row of our DataFrame object.

>>> dataset.iloc[0]



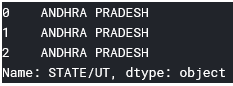
Ont the contrary to ow index is done in python, both of the Pandas indexing methods(loc and iloc) are row-first and column-second. Making it slightly easier to access rows and slightly easier to access columns. To access first column using iloc we use the following method.

>>> dataset.iloc[ : , 0] # 0 for first column, 1 for second and so on



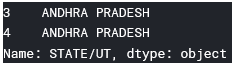
Here the ‘:’ operator just like in native python is being used to refer to a range of values if the both the boundaries are not provided it is synonymous to “everything”. Lets use this operator to return only the first three rows this time.

>>> dataset.iloc[ : 3, 0] # stop copying form index 3



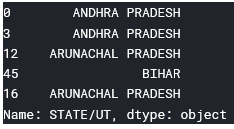
For selecting only the fourth and fifth entries we use,

>>> dataset.iloc[3 : 5, 0] # start from index three and stop from index 5



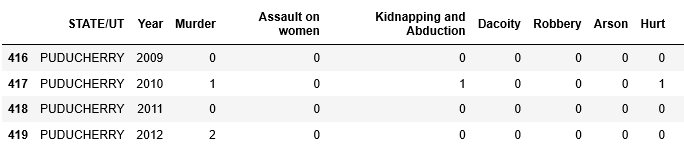
It’s also allowed to pass a list of indexes as follows.

>>> dataset.iloc[[0, 3, 12, 45, 16], 0]



Just like in native python negative numbers can be used. An example is shown below where the selection starts from four rows from the end.

>>> dataset.iloc[-4 : ]



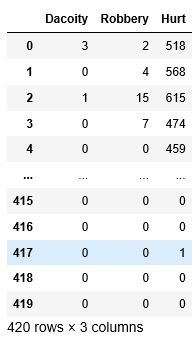
### Label based selection

The second selection paradigm that pandas provides is implemented using the loc operator. This operator uses the value of the data instead of its index to perform the indexing operation. Take an example of retrieving the first entry of our DataFrame using the loc operator. This can be done as follows.

>>> dataset.loc[0, "STATE/UT"]



Conceptually speaking iloc is more simpler than loc as it ignores the information in the dataset’s indices and considers the dataset as one big matrix. On the contrary to iloc, the loc operator uses the information in the dataset’s indices for indexing. As dataset’s usually include include indices it is easier to use loc instead for indexing. Here is an example that shows how indexing using loc is easier with dataset’s that include indices.



### How to choose between loc and iloc

There are some points to keep in mind when choosing between the loc and iloc indexing operators as these operators have slightly different methods of indexing. The iloc operator starts including from the first element of the provided range and starts excluding from the last element as iloc uses the indexing scheme in Python’s stdlib where the first element is included and the last last element is excluded. For example [3 : 7] selects the entries from 3 to 6. On the contrary loc indexes inclusively meaning it includes the last index in the selection, so [3 : 7] selects the entries from 3 to 7.

This change is made for the loc operator as the loc operator can index any stdlib type like strings which makes this change necessary for cases like the example shown below.

Say for a DataFrame “df” with index values “Monday”, “Tuesday”, … we require to select the days of the week between “Thursday” and “Sunday”. Indexing them is conveniently made possible using,

>>> df.loc["Thursday", "Sunday"]

Choosing between these two operators especially gets confusing when dealing with a numerical list like 0…100 in which case,

>>> df.loc[0 : 100]

Will return a hundred entries from 0 to 99, where as when we provide the same range to the loc operator as below.

>>> df.loc[0 : 100]

This returns 101 entries from 0 to 100. In all other aspects he semantics of using the iloc operator are the same as for the loc operator.

### Index manipulation

Label based selection using loc operator is especially useful when the DataFrame being dealt with has labels for its indices. The indices are not immutable so we can change is as needed. The DataFrame class of Pandas provides a method that can help with this task.

Now lets use this function inn our crime data set. Although it may not be a suitable index for a data set the instruction below sets the “STATE/UT” field as the index of the DataFrame.

>>> dataset.set\_index("STATE/UT")

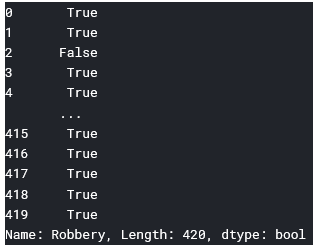


This function is would be useful if the dataset being used had a field that could be used as an index.

### Conditional selection

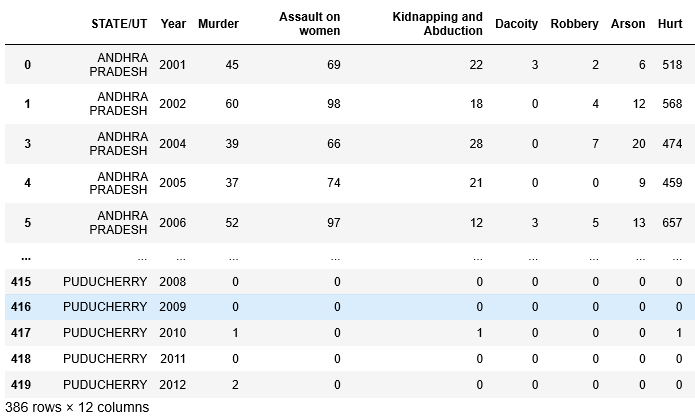
How do we select only the entries that satisfy a provided condition. For example selecting all the states of the country that had less than 10 robbery cases in a year. For this we can start by checking each state, if had less than 10 robbery cases. This can be done as shown below.

>>> dataset.Robbery < 10



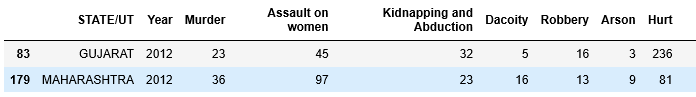
Observe that what this operation returned is a Series object consisting of boolean values each indicating whether the appropriate entry satisfies the provided condition or not. This Series object can now be used with the loc operator to select data that is relevant as follows.

>>> dataset.loc[dataset.Robbery < 10]



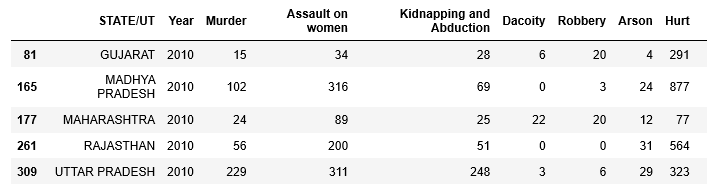
This DataFrame has 386 rows which means that very few state and year combinations have seen 10 or more robberies a year. Pandas also supports multiple conditions which can be joined together using the & (and) or the |(or) operators. Lets select all the states that had 10 or more robberies in the year 2012.

>>> dataset.loc[(dataset.Robbery > 10) & (dataset.Year == 2012)]



In case we want all the states that had either more than 20 cases of Arson or 15 cases of robbery in the year 2010 then we could use the instruction shown below.

>>> dataset.loc[((dataset.Arson > 20) | (dataset.Robbery > 15)) & (dataset.Year == 2010)]



Pandas provides a set of built in conditional selectors. Here we’ll go through two of them which are,

1. isin()
2. isnull() and notnull()

The isin selector allows selecting data which is in a list of provided values. This is how we can select all records of 2001, 2007 and 20012.

>>> dataset.loc[dataset.Year.isin([2001, 2007, 2012])]



The second selector we’ll discuss here is “isnull” and ‘notnull”. These selectors allow filtering out values that aren’t/are null. Lets try filtering out all records that have a null value for robbery. We can accomplish this task with the following line of code.

>>> dataset.loc[dataset.Year.notnull()]



Observe that all the rows were returned and none of the rows were filtered out as all the rows had a value for the “Year” column.

### Assigning values

Values can be assigned to the entries of a DataFrame. Values assigned can be a constant value or an iterable of values. An example of assigning constant values is shown below.

>>> dataset["Arson"] = "xyz"

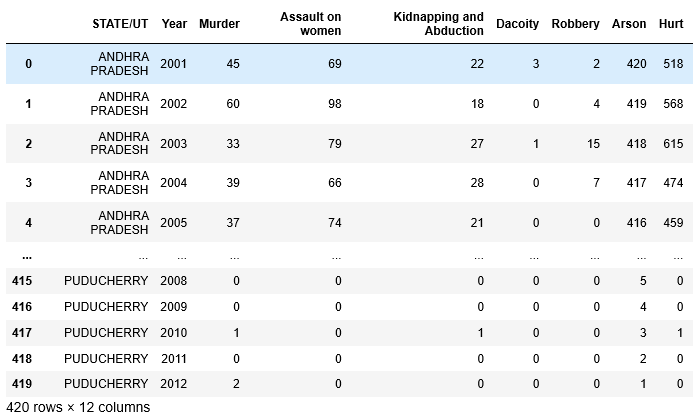
>>> dataset



An example of assigning an iterable of values is given below.

>>> dataset["Arson"] = range(len(dataset), 0, -1)

>>> dataset



## Summarizing functions and maps

In this previous section we learned how to select the appropriate data that was required for the task at hand. Although selecting the data that we require is a crucial task, it’s important to note that the data that we have at hand is not always in the format that is required. In which case we need to reformat the data in a way that is appropriate for the task at hand.

We will continue using the crime data set of the previous section in this this section as well.

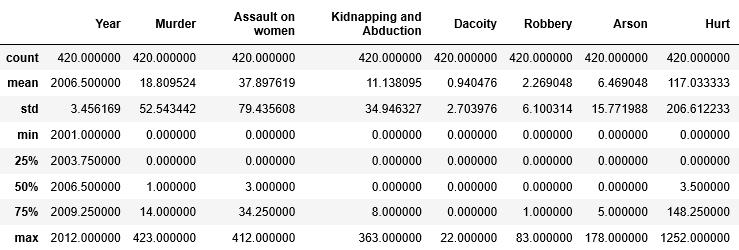
### Summary Functions

Pandas provides several functions to summarize data, meaning that functions can be used for restructuring the data in a useful manner.

**describe( )**

We’ll go through some important functions here,starting with the describe( ) function. It is available for DataFrames as well as Series objects. The instruction below calls the describe( ) of the DataFrame named “dataset”.

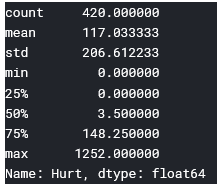
>>> dataset.describe()



When the describe( ) method is called for a DataFrame object it Returns a DataFrame with the count, mean standard deviation, minimum value, lower quartile, middle quartile(median), upper quartile and maximum value of all numerical and floating point columns of the DataFrame.

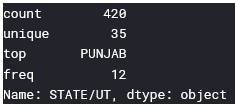
The describe( ) method is also made available for Series objects. The describe methods returns different results based on the data type of the entries that the Series object contains. In the instruction below we call the describe function for the column “Hurt” which is a column of type integer.

>>> dataset["Hurt"].describe()



Now lets call the describe method for a column with string entries like “STATE/UT”.

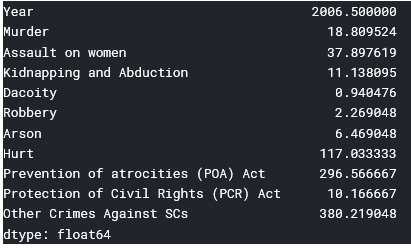
>>> dataset["STATE/UT"].describe()



**mean( )**

Pandas provides several functions that help acquire simple summary statistics about a Series/column or a DataFrame. Lets take a look at a few starting with the mean method which returns the average of all entries. Here is an example of using the using the mean method of a DataFrame object.

>>> dataset.mean()



Here is an example of using the mean method of a Series object.

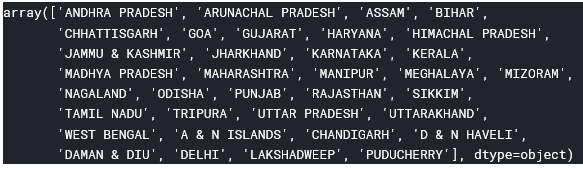
>>> dataset["Hurt"].mean()



**unique( )**

This method returns a list of all the unique values of the Series object on which it was called upon.

>>> dataset["STATE/UT"].unique()



**value\_counts( )**

This method can e used to see the unique values of a Series object along with the number of occurrences of that value in the Series.

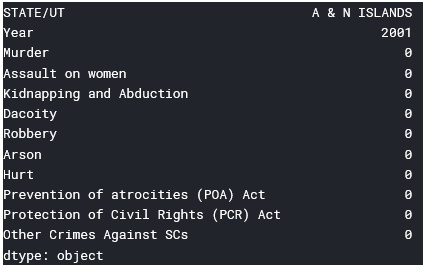
>>> dataset["STATE/UT"].value\_counts()



**min( )**

The DataFrame.min( ) method returns a Series consisting of the minimum values of all the columns of the DataFrame.

>>> dataset.min()



The Series.min( ) method returns the smallest value in the Series object.

>>> dataset["Hurt"].min()



**idxmin( )**

The Series.idxmin( ) method return the index of the smallest value in this Series object and in case there more than one, it returns the index of the first occurrence of this value.

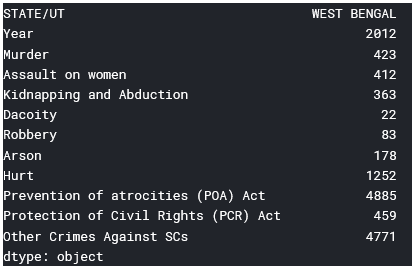
>>> dataset.Hurt.idxmin()



**max( )**

The DataFrame.max( ) method returns a Series consisting of the maximum values of all the columns of the DataFrame.

>>> dataset.max()



The Series.max( ) method returns the largest value in the Series object.

>>> dataset["Hurt"].max()



**idxmax( )**

The Series.idxmax( ) method return the index of the largest value in this Series object and in case there more than one, it returns the index of the first occurrence of this value.

>>> dataset.Hurt.idxmax()



### Maps

This is a word taken from mathematics which refers to taking one set of values and mapping them to another set of values by applying certain operations on them. When working with data you will very often have the need to create new representations of this data or transform it into other formats.

Here we will discuss two mapping methods that are used very often by data scientists and they are,

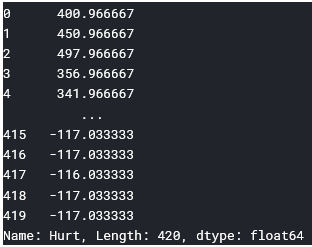
1. map( )
2. apply( )

**map( )**

The map( ) method is the more simpler one and it can be called for a Series object or a DataFrame column. This method takes a function as an argument which in turn takes a single value as an argument and returns the transformed value back to the caller. The map( ) method returns a Series object where all entries where transformed by the provided transformation function. Now to re-mean the entries of the column “Hurt” to 0, we do,

>>> dataset\_Hurt\_mean = dataset.Hurt.mean()

>>> dataset.Hurt.map(lambda x: x - dataset\_Hurt\_mean)



**apply( )**

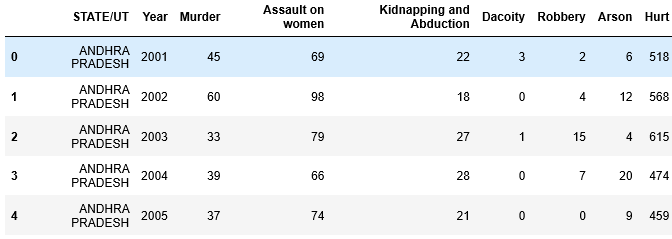
The apply( ) method performs the same functionality as the map( ) method but it is meant for DataFrame objects instead. The code below shows the same re-mean operation performed on every row of the “dataset” DataFrame.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | dataset\_Hurt\_mean = dataset.Hurt.mean() # calculate mean of Hurt column  def Hurt\_mean(row):  row.Hurt = row.Hurt - dataset\_Hurt\_mean # function to transform a row  return row  dataset.apply(Hurt\_mean, axis = "columns") # apply transformation function  # on every row |



If the dataset.apply() method was called with axis = ‘index’ then instead of passing a function that transforms each row, we need to pass it a function that transforms each column. The map and apply methods return new Series and DataFrame objects without modifying the original objects that they were called upon. To verify this take a look at the first 5 rows of the dataset object and note that the Hurt column remains unchanged.

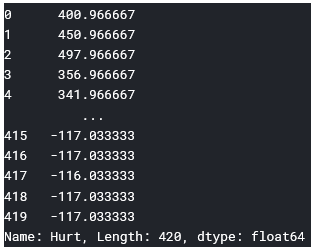
>>> dataset.head(5)



Pandas provides several common mapping operations that are built so lets use one of those operation by writing a simpler way to re-mean the entries of a column.

>>> dataset\_Hurt\_mean = dataset.Hurt.mean()

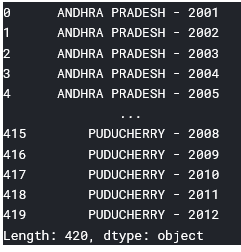
>>> dataset.Hurt - dataset\_Hurt\_mean



Observe that here we are subtracting an integer object from a series object with several entries. Pandas will take the integer object on the right side of the operator and subtract it from all the entries of the Series object on the left sided of the operator. This will also work in this case where Two equal sized Series objects are being used as shown below. Take for example an easy way to connect the “STATE/UT” and “Year” columns is shown below.

>>> Year\_str = dataset.Year.map(lambda x: str(x))

>>> dataset["STATE/UT"] + " - " + Year\_str



These operators are faster than the map( ) and the apply( ) methods mentioned earlier as they use speed up mechanisms that pandas has built in. All the standard operators like >, ==, <, and others work the same way but they are not as flexible map( ) and apply methods as they have scope to involve more complex instructions like conditional logic and other instructions which can not be performed simply by using the addition and subtraction operators

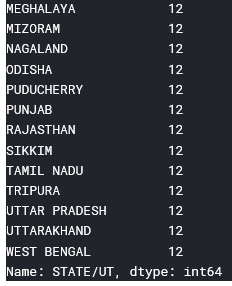
## Grouping and sorting

The concept of maps that we’ve learned in the last section is useful for transforming data of a DataFrame or a Series object.Often data scientists encounter situations where they need to group data into distinct parts and perform certain operations on these parts. This task can be achieved using the groupby( ) method.

### Grouping

We have already seen the use of the value\_counts( ) method in the previous sections. Lets use the groupby( ) method to perform the same operation as the value\_counts( ) method.

>>> dataset.groupby("STATE/UT")["STATE/UT"].count()



The instruction shown above is performs the same operation as

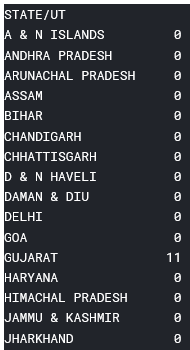
>>> dataset["STATE/UT"].value\_counts()



The groupby function used in the above instruction groups the records with the same value for the column “STATE/UT”, then for each group, counts the number of appearances of values in the “STATE/UT” column.

It is possible to use any of Pandas summary functions that we discussed before with the groupby( ) method. For example the code below uses the min( ) summary function. Here it returns the least number of Robberies that each state encountered in any of the years that the data is made available for.

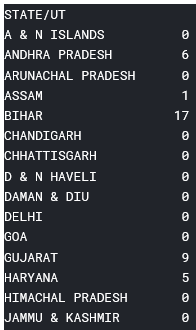
>>> dataset.groupby("STATE/UT").Robbery.min()



**Using apply( ) with groupby( )**

Each group can be considered as a subset of the original data set with only the matching values. These groups can be accessed using the apply( ) method that we have learned about earlier. The apply method can be used to manipulate the data as required. The instruction below is of example of using apply( ) method of the DataFrameGroupby object which is returned by calling the groupby method of a DataFrame object. This instruction calls the creates groups of data using the using the “STATE/UT” column then selects the number of Arson crimes from the first record of every group.

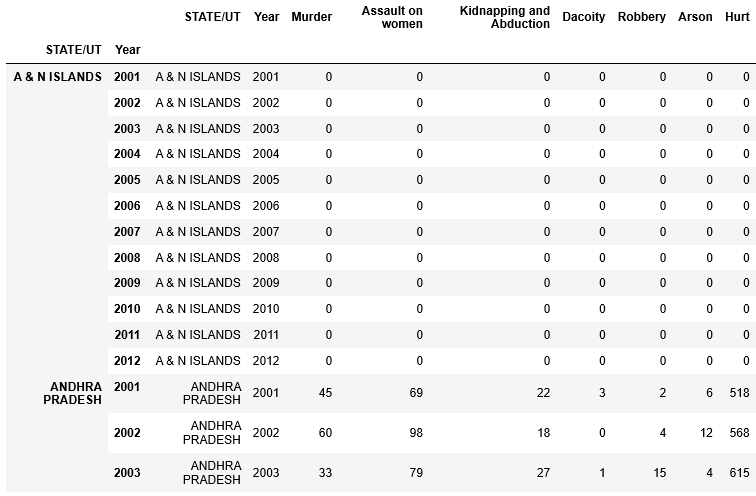
>>> dataset.groupby("STATE/UT").apply(lambda row: row["Arson"].iloc[0])



**groupby( ) on multiple columns**

Another useful way the groupby method of DataFrames can be used is by supplying more than one column to group the DataFrame with. This give much more control than using a single column. The instruction below selects records with highest number of arson's by State and Year. This example although not practically useful as there is only one record for each state and year combination, it is provided to understand grouping with multiple columns.

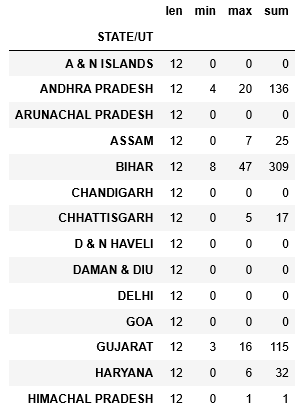
>>> dataset.groupby(["STATE/UT", "Year"]).apply(lambda record : record.loc[record["Arson"].idxmax()]).head(15)



**agg( )**

Another useful method is the agg( ) method which can be applied to DataFrameGroupby objects. This method can be used to run several different functions on a column of a DataFrame object simultaneously making it useful to generate statistical summaries of a data set. An example is shown below for the Arson column of our DataFrame object.

>>> dataset.groupby("STATE/UT").Arson.agg([len, min, max, sum])



### Multiple indexes

The DataFrame and Series objects of most of the examples that we have seen so far had a single label index. The groupby( ) method sometimes results in more thasn one index based on the number of columns provided to the groupby( ) method during the call. In such cases the groupby( ) method returns objects with a multi-index. The difference between a regular index and a multi-index is that a regular index has a single index whereas a multi-index has multiple levels of indexes. Take a look at the example below.

>>> Arson\_sum = dataset.groupby(["STATE/UT", "Year"]).Arson.agg([sum])

>>> Arson\_sum



>>> Arson\_sum\_index = Arson\_sum.index

>>> type(Arson\_sum\_index)



Pandas provides several functions for handling the tiered structure of objects with a multi-index, but the one that you may often use is the reset\_index( ) method which is used to convert a DataFrame with a multi-index back to it’s version with a regular index. An example of it in use is shown below.

>>> Arson\_sum.reset\_index()



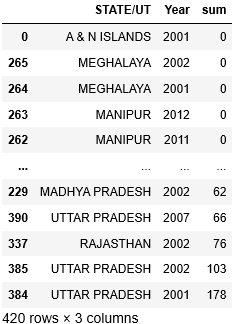
### Sorting

The ordering of rows in the Arson\_sum variable after resting the index is in index order instead of value order. That is because, for the output of the groupby operation the order of the output depends on the index values instead of the data values. Pandas provides methods to sort the data in the way that we want. The sort\_values( ) can be used to sort the data in the required manner.

Lets sort the rows of the Arson\_sum DataFrame in ascending order of the column “sum”.

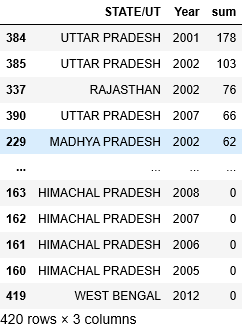
>>> Arson\_sum = Arson\_sum.reset\_index()

>>> Arson\_sum.sort\_values(by = 'sum')



The default order for the sort\_values( ) method is ascending, but the often case is that we will need our data in descending order where the largest values come first this can be done as follows.

>>> Arson\_sum.sort\_values(by = 'sum', ascending = False)



To sort the rows by the index values, you can use the sort\_index( ) which has the same default order and arguments.

>> Arson\_sum.sort\_index()



To sort the data by more than one column the following approach can be used.

>>> dataset.sort\_values(by = ['Arson', 'Robbery'], ascending = False)



## Data types and missing values

In this section we will focus on Identifying data types of Series objects and columns of DataFrame objects. We will also have an introduction to working with missing values in a data set.

### Data types

The data type of a DataFrame object’s columns or a series object can be accessed using the dtype attribute. This attribute is useful to investigate the type of data that such objects hold.

The statement below accesses the dtype attribute of Series object. This returns the type of values that the series object holds.

>>> Hurt = pd.Series(dataset.Hurt) # converts column to Series type

>>> Hurt.dtype



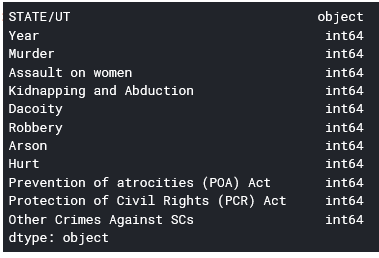
The statement below accesses the dtype attribute of the column of a DataFrame object.This returns the type of values that this DataFrame column holds

>>> dataset.Hurt.dtype



The statement below accesses the dtype attribute of DataFrame object. This returns the type of values that each that each column of the DataFrame holds.

>>> dataset.dtype



**Changing data types**

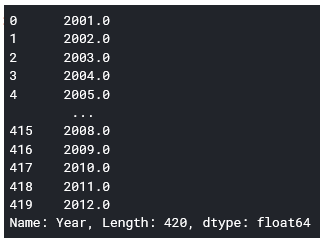
The astype() method of series objects can be used to change the data type that a series object holds. This method takes a string argument indicating the target data type to convert all entries into. In the example below the data type of the Year column of our DataFrame is converted from integer type to floating point type.

>>> dataset.Year.dtype



>>> Year\_col = dataset.Year.astype('float64')

>>> Year\_col



>>> Year\_col.dtype



The index of a DataFrame object or a Series object has a data type as well. This can be seen from the examples shown below.

>>> pd.Series(Year\_col).index.dtype



>>> dataset.index.dtype

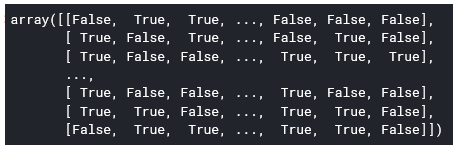


### Dealing with missing values

There are several data sets which have missing values. This missing data is usually a result of difficulties in obtaining the values to those entries. Pandas fills missing values with “NaN” which is short for “Not a Number”.Pandas treats NaN values as floats.

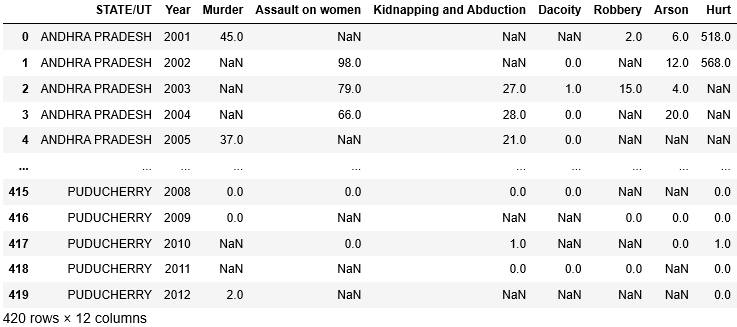
In this section we will go through how to identify and replace missing values in a dataset. For that we will randomly introduce missing values to our dataset. The code below copies the the first two columns(STATE?UT and Year) from the DataFrame, stores them as series objects and drops these columns from the DataFrame(This is because we don’t want to introduce missing values to the first two columns). Line-4 creates a matrix of boolean values where 40% of the entries are true.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | States = pd.Series(dataset["STATE/UT"])  Years = pd.Series(dataset["Year"])  dataset\_no\_keys = dataset.drop(["STATE/UT", "Year"], axis = 1)  nan\_matrix = np.random.random(dataset\_no\_keys.shape) < 0.4 # 40% of entries made # NaN  nan\_matrix |
|  |  |



The mask method of a DataFrame object, for all entries in the passed array that is “True”, turns those entries in the caller DataFrame to NaN. Now to this new DataFrame with missing values add the two columns that were removed earlier. This is our DataFrame with missing values.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | dataset\_nan = dataset\_no\_keys.mask(nan\_matrix)  dataset\_nan.insert(0, "Year", Years, True)  dataset\_nan.insert(0, "STATE/UT", States, True)  dataset\_nan |



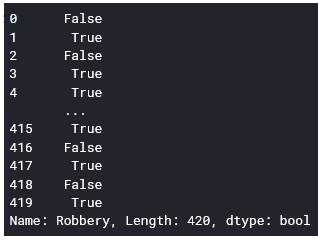
Pandas has several methods that help work with missing values. The methods that can be used to select entries with missing values or entries without missing values are,

1. pd.isnull( )
2. pd.notnull( )

They can be used as shown below. When the isnull or notnull method is called with a Series object returns the a series object of type bool indicating which entries are missing in case of isnull( ) and indicates which entries are not missing in case of notnull( ).

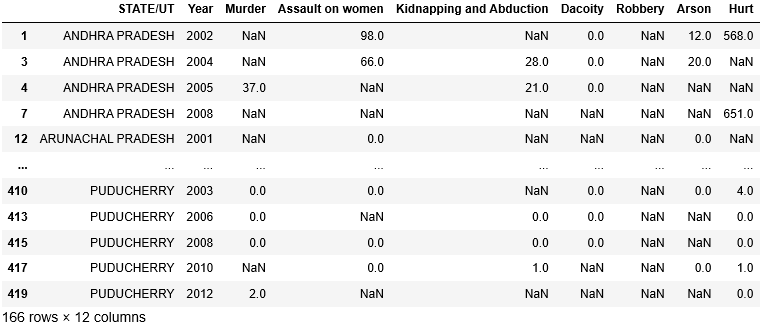
>>> Robbery\_missing = pd.isnull(dataset\_nan.Robbery) # if NaN then True else False

>>> Robbery\_missing



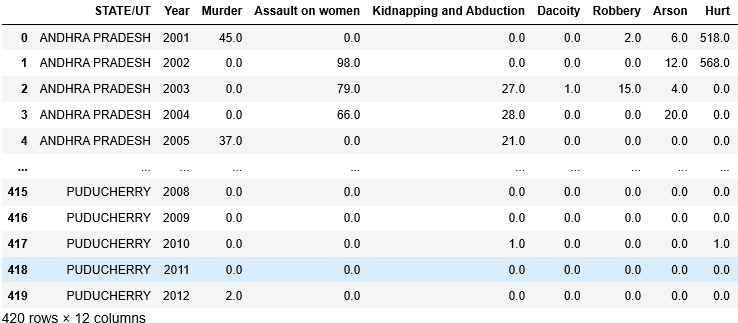
The statement shown below returns all rows where the entry for robbery was missing. This same approach can be used to obtain all the rows were entries of a column are not missing using Pandas notnull method.

>>> dataset\_nan[pd.isnull(dataset\_nan.Robbery)]



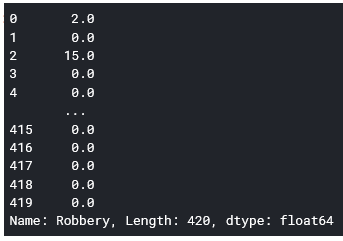
When a data set that is being worked on has missing values, a common values that is performed is replacing the NaN value to another suitable value. Pandas provides a method for this named fillna( ) which can can be called on Series and DataFrame objects and takes the value to replace the missing value with. An example for this is replacing the NaN value to 0 for an entire DataFrame.

>>> dataset\_nan.fillna(0)



The statement below return the Robbery column of our DataFrame with all missing values replaced with 0.

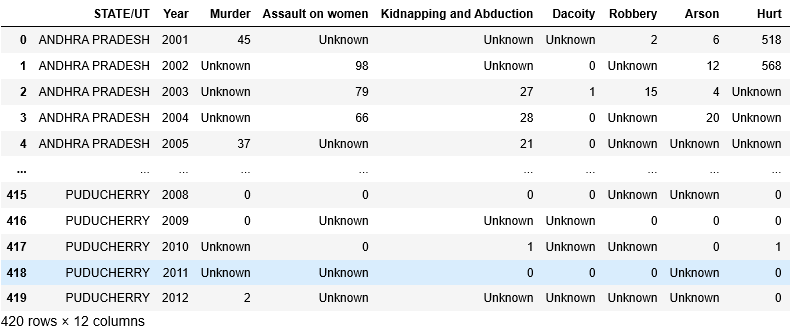
>>> dataset\_nan.Robbery.fillna(0)



Incase the dataset that is being worked on has missing values already filled in by some value, for example unknown as shown below. Pandas provides a method replace that can be used to replace a specified value with another specified value. Lets fill all missing values in our dataset with the string “Unknown”.

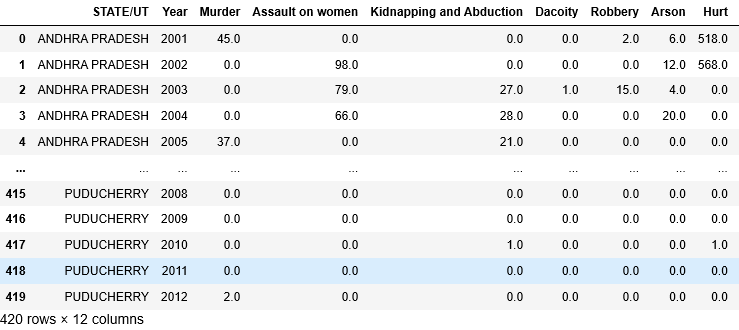
>>> dataset\_nan = dataset\_nan.fillna("Unknown")

>>> dataset\_nan



We can use the replace method to replace all occurrences of “Unknown” to a value that is more preferred in our case, like the integer 0.

>>> dataset\_nan.replace("Unknown", 0)



## Renaming and combining

The dataset at hand very often comes with unsatisfactory column names, index names and naming conventions, in which case we will want to change the column and index names. There is also very often a need to combine multiple different DataFrame and Series objects into one object.

### Renaming

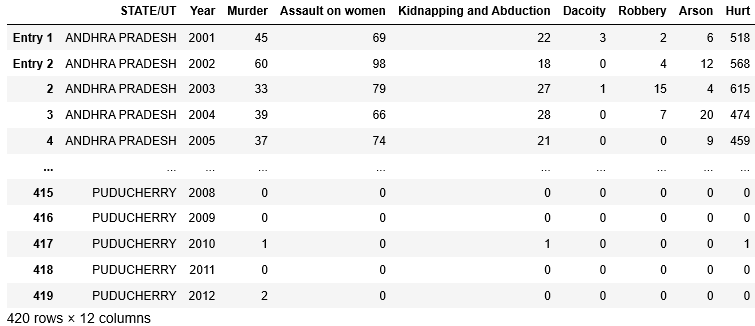
Pandas provides a method rename( ) that can be used to change a DataFrames column names and/or index names. For example to change the “STATE/UT” column to “State of occurrence”and “Year” column to “Year of occurrence” we could use the statement shown below.

>>> dataset.rename(columns = {"STATE/UT" : "State of occurrence", "Year" : "Year of occurrence"})



Rename can be performed on either or both index or column by specifying the index or column keyword parameter. Although this method supports several input parameters, dictionaries are the usually the most convenient. The statement below renames the first and second row indexes.

>>> dataset.rename(index = {0 : "Entry 1", 1 : "Entry 2"})



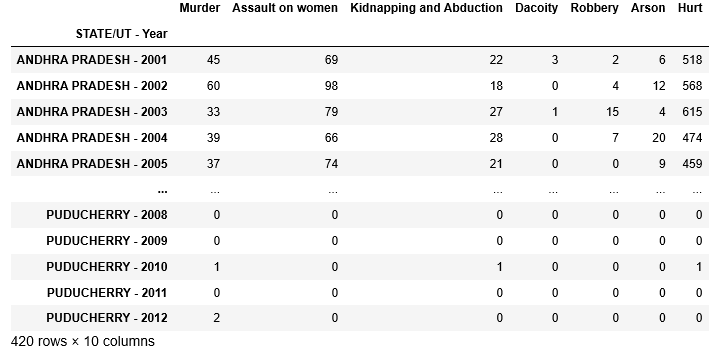
Pandas also provides a method that can be used to rename the axis names. To make it easier to understand lets set both “STATE/UT” and “Year” as the index columns for our DataFrame. This can be done with the set\_index( ) method of DataFrames that we have learned in the previous sections.

>>> dataset.set\_index(["STATE/UT", "Year"])



The code snippet below is used to combine both index column “STATE/UT” and “Year” into a single index column.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | Year\_str = dataset.Year.map(lambda x: str(x))  place\_and\_year = pd.Series(dataset["STATE/UT"] + " - " + Year\_str)  dataset\_copy = dataset.drop(["STATE/UT", "Year"], axis = 1)  dataset\_copy.insert(0, "STATE/UT - Year", place\_and\_year, True)  dataset\_copy = dataset\_copy.set\_index("STATE/UT - Year")  dataset\_copy |



The rename\_axis( ) method can be used to rename the axis for both rows or columns. The statement below renames the axis for the rows from “STATE/UT - Year” to “Time period and place”, then renames the axis for columns to “Crimes”.

>>> dataset\_copy.rename\_axis("Time period and place", axis = "rows").rename\_axis("Crimes", axis = "columns")



### Combining

There are often cases where there is a need to combine several DataFrames and/or Series together. Pandas provides three methods to achieve this a nd they are listed below in the order of increasing complexity.

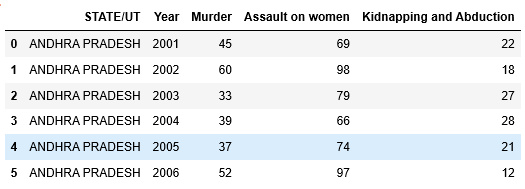
1. concat( )
2. join( )
3. merge( )

In this section we will learn to use the first two as most of what can be achieved using merge can also be done using the join( ) method.

To demonstrate combining DataFrames and Series we will use subsets of our dataset. The statement below creates a DataFrame consists of data entries for the first six years and 3 crime features for the first state in the dataset.

>>> State\_1 = dataset.iloc[ : 6, : 5]

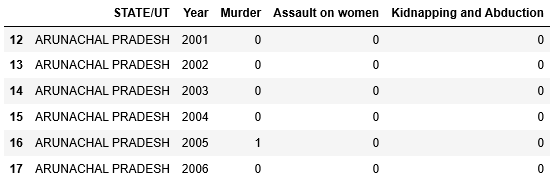
>>> State\_1



Select similar entries for the second state as shown in the statement below.

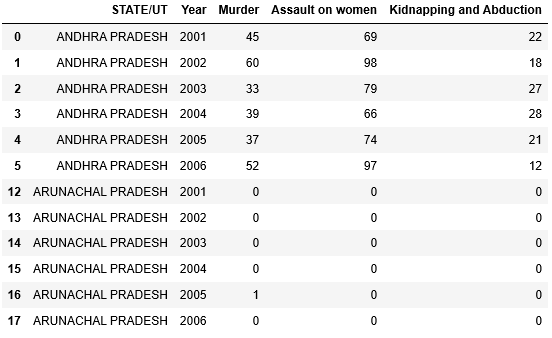
>>> State\_2 = dataset.iloc[12 : 18, : 5]

>>> State\_2



The concat( ) method is used to combine a set of elements together along an axis as shown below.

>>> pd.concat([State\_1, State\_2])

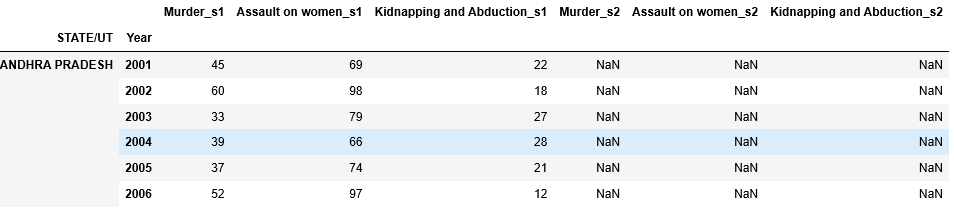


The second method that Pandas provides is the join( ) method which allows combining DataFrames that have an index in common an example is shown below. In this example we create two DataFrames called “left” and “right” with the index for both being the “STATE/UT” and “Year” columns. Then the join method of the DataFrame “left” is called by passing it the DataFrame “right” as an argument and set the suffix for columns of from these two DataFrames to help us differentiate.

>>> left = State\_1.set\_index(["STATE/UT", "Year"])

>>> right = State\_2.set\_index(["STATE/UT", "Year"])

>>> left.join(right, lsuffix = "\_s1", rsuffix = "\_s2")



# Data visualization with seaborn

This chapter goes through the basics of data visualization and will help the reader get started on making their own visualizations of the data they have. We will deal with several of the most common and generally important plot types, most of which can be created using a single line of code. Before trying any of the examples of the later sections make sure you import the data, parse the dates and set Year as the index column, then import the required python libraries including matplotlib and seaborn(Which is what we will use to create visualizations).

>>> dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv", index\_col= "Year", parse\_dates = True)

>>> pd.plotting.register\_matplotlib\_converters()

>>> import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

>>> import seaborn as sns

## Line charts

I this section we will discuss when and how to use lineplots. A “trend” can be defined as a pattern by which something changes. Lineplots are best used to show trends over a time period. Multiple plot can be used to show how different variables change over the same time period.

From our dataset select a subset of the crimes for the first state in the dataset and display the first five rows of our selection.

>>> state\_1 = dataset.iloc[ : 12, 1 : 7]a

>>> state\_1.head(5)



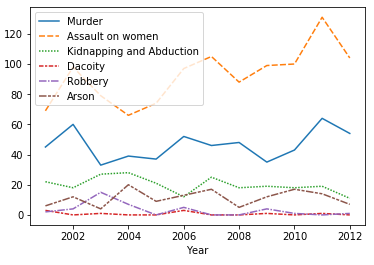
Display the last five rows of our selection as shown below.

>>> state\_1.tail(5)



Seaborn library provides the lineplot( ) function which creates a line plot when it is passed data that it can used to plot. Line plots are generally used to show how variables change over time. The line plot for our DataFrame “state\_1” is shown below.

>>> sns.lineplot(data = state\_1)



Almost every command that will be used to create a visualization in this chapter will start with “sns.” which indicates that all the visualization functions being used are made available by the seaborn library. The above line of code has two parts

* sns.lineplot( ) - which indicates that a lineplot is to be created.
* data = state\_1 - which indicates what data is to be used to create the plot

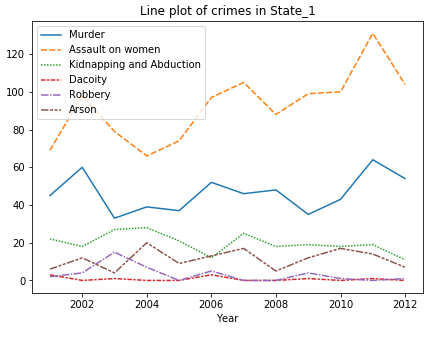
You may also want to change certain aspects of the visualization like the figure size and the title, that can be achieved as shown below.

>>> plt.figure(figsize = (7, 5)) # Set width to 7 inches and height to 5 inches

>>> plt.title("Line plot of crimes in State\_1") # Set title

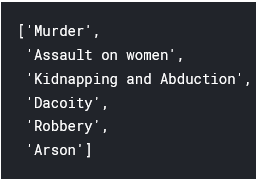
>>> sns.lineplot(data = state\_1)

Here the first line of code set the figure size to 7 inches in width and 5 inches in height. The second line set the Title of the plot to the string that is passed as an argument.



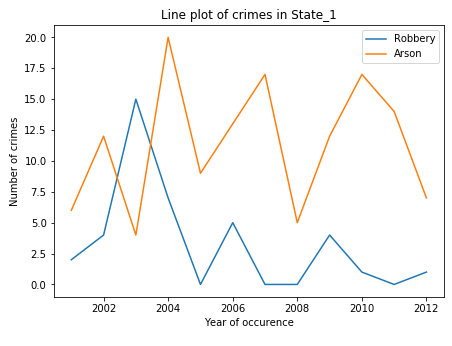
We’ve learned how to create a lineplot for every column of DataFrame, but what if we want to create a lineplot for a subset of the columns. Lets start by printing the columns of DataFrame “state\_1”.

>>> list(state\_1.columns) # list of all columns in the dataframe



Lets create a lineplot which include the columns Robbery and Arson, in which case we call the lineplot function for each column by passing the column as the value for the “data” parameter of the function call. The label parameter is used to set a user specified label for the plot of that column. The “xlabel” and “ylabel” attributes can be used to set the labels of the x an y axes of the plot.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | plt.figure(figsize = (7, 5))  plt.title("Line plot of crimes in State\_1")  sns.lineplot(data = state\_1["Robbery"], label = "Robbery")  sns.lineplot(data = state\_1.Arson, label = "Arson")  plt.xlabel("Year of occurence")  plt.ylabel("Number of crimes") |



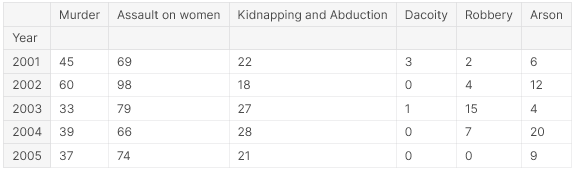
## Bar charts and heatmaps

In this section we will learn of when and how to use bar charts and heat maps. We will use the same selection that was used in the last section.

>>> dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv", index\_col= "Year")

>>> state\_1 = dataset.iloc[ : 12, 1 : 7]

>>> state\_1.head(5)

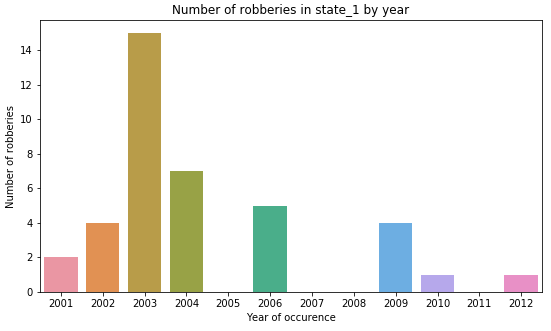


### Bar charts

Bar charts can be used to understand the relationship between different variables in your data. They help in the comparison of quantities that belong to different groups.

The code below creates a bar chart that shows the number of robberies in the first state of our dataset by year.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | plt.figure(figsize = (9, 5))  plt.title("Number of robberies in state\_1 by year")  sns.barplot(x = state\_1.index, y = state\_1.Robbery)  plt.xlabel("Year of occurence")  plt.ylabel("Number of robberies") |



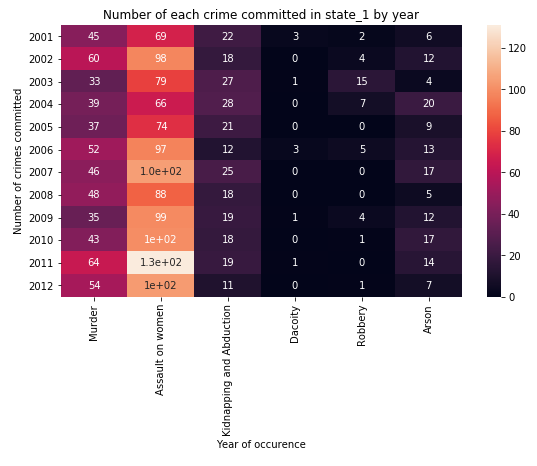
Here the way to set figure size, title, x axis label and y axis label are the same as how it was done in the previous section. Line - 4 consists of three components

* Sns.barplot - indicates that the visualization to be created is a barplot.
* X = state\_1.index - indicates that the index is used for the horizontal axis
* Y = state\_1.Robbery - Setting the column that determines each bar’s height

### Heatmaps

Heatmaps can be used to understand the relationships between variables/features in data. Heatmaps provide color coded patterns in a table of integers and floating point values. Heatmaps can take a matrix of numerical values and create a chart that uses color contrast to show the relationship between variables. Here the way to set figure size, title, x axis label and y axis label are the same as how it was done in the previous section. The code below creates a histogram for the data in “state\_1”. The histogram fills every cell with a color based on it’s numerical value. This helps us to visualize patterns in the dataset.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | plt.figure(figsize = (9, 5))  plt.title("Number of each crime committed in state\_1 by year")  sns.heatmap(data = state\_1, annot = True)  plt.xlabel("Year of occurence")  plt.ylabel("Number of crimes committed") |



Line - 4 has three components and they are,

* Sns.heatmap - indicates that the chart to draw is a heatmap.
* Data = state\_1 - what data is used to draw the chart
* Annot = True - makes sure that the numerical value of each cell appear on the cell

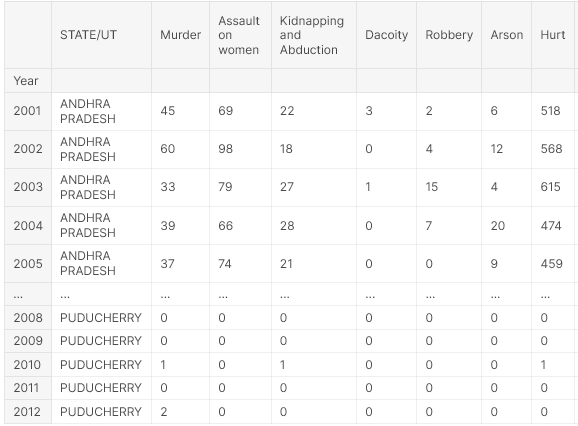
## Scatter plots

Scatter plot is another plot type that helps understand the relationship between the data better. They are generally used to to visualize the relationship between two continuous variables. This can be further extended to show the relationship with another categorical variable by using color codes.

In this section we will work with the same crime data that we have been using so far.

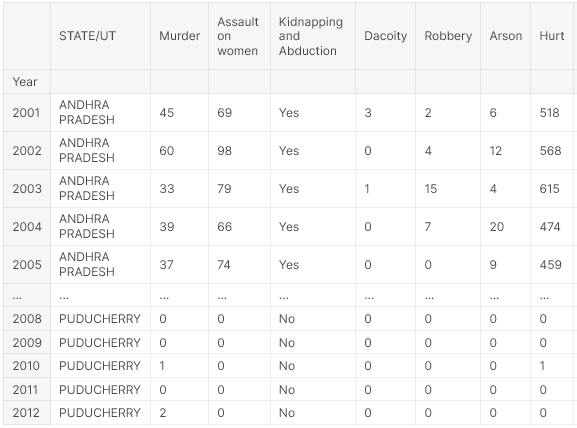
>>> dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv", index\_col= "Year")

>>> dataset



For the explanation of certain concepts in this section we will use the code below to change the entry in the “Kidnapping and Abduction” column to “Yes” if the value of the entry was greater than or equal to 10, otherwise the value is changed to “No”. We define a function “is\_high” for this and using the apply method of DataFrame objects we change the entries of the “Kidnapping and Abduction” column.

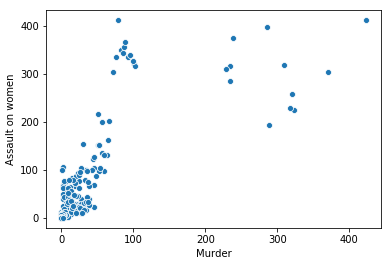
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | def is\_high(row):  if row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] >= 10:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "Yes"  else:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "No"  return row  dataset\_copy = dataset.apply(is\_high, axis = "columns")  dataset\_copy |



For creating a simple scatter plot we can use the sns.scatterplot( ) function as shown below. Here the two parameters passed are,

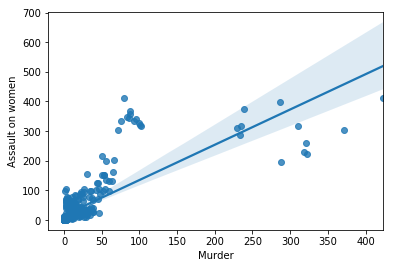
* X - variable on the horizontal axis (In this case column “Murder”)
* Y - variable on the vertical axis (In this case column “Assault on women”)

>>> sns.scatterplot(x = dataset\_copy["Murder"], y = dataset\_copy["Assault on women"])



The above scatter plot shows that both these variables are positively correlated(upward slope). This shoes that states with higher number Murders also has a high number of assaults on women. Although this relationship can be easily seen we may want to verify the strength of this relationship that we just found by adding a regression line that represents the line that best fits the data. This can simply be done by using the function sns.regplot( ) instead with the same parameters as shown below.

>>> sns.regplot(x = dataset\_copy["Murder"], y = dataset\_copy["Assault on women"])

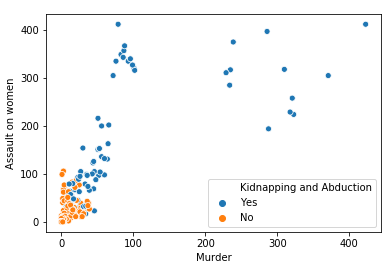


**Color coded scatter plots**

Scatter plots can also be used to show the relationship between three variables not necessarily using another axis for the third variable but by using color coding points instead.

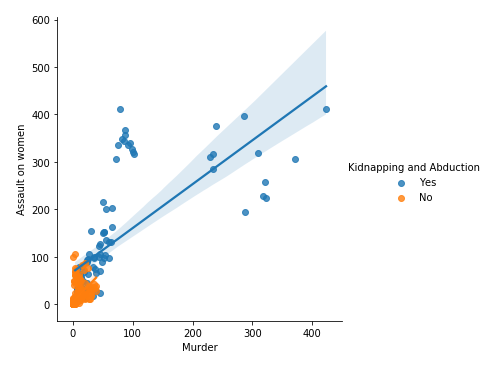
For example to see if the variable “Kidnapping and Abduction” has any relationship with these two variables that we already have a scatter plot for, we can call the scatter plot function with an added hue argument as shown below.

>>> sns.scatterplot(x = dataset\_copy["Murder"], y = dataset\_copy["Assault on women"], hue = dataset\_copy["Kidnapping and Abduction"])



This scatter plot shows that states with higher number of kidnapping and abduction cases tend to have higher number of murders and assaults on women. It also shows that in states with lesser kidnapping cases the assault on women cases inrease very rapidly compared to the case where there are more number of kidnapping cases, in which the increase is slightly lower. To verify and emphasize this correctness of our observation we can use the sns.lmplot( ) function which shows lines that represent the data for every category of the categorical variable provided(Kidnapping and Abduction in this case).

>>> sns.lmplot(x = "Murder", y = "Assault on women", hue = "Kidnapping and Abduction", data = dataset\_copy)

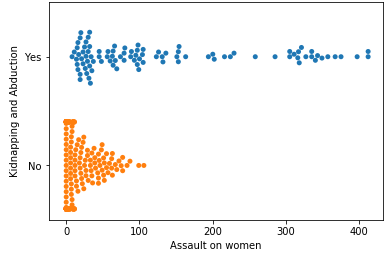


Observe that the sns.lmplot( ) differs from the scatter plot function regarding the parameters it takes as well.

* ‘x’, ‘y’ and “hue” are passed the column names instead of the entire column
* The DataFrame object to search for the column names is also passed

There is another plot type that looks different from the scatter plot that we have dealt with so far. Scatter plots we have seen so far had at least two continuous variables. Now he plot we have below shows what is called a categorical scatter plot which involves a categorical variable and a continuous variable. This type of plot can be used with the sns.swarmplot( ) function. This type of function is shown below using the variables “Kidnapping and Abduction” and “Assault on women”.

>>> sns.swarmplot(x = dataset\_copy["Assault on women"], y = dataset\_copy["Kidnapping and Abduction"])



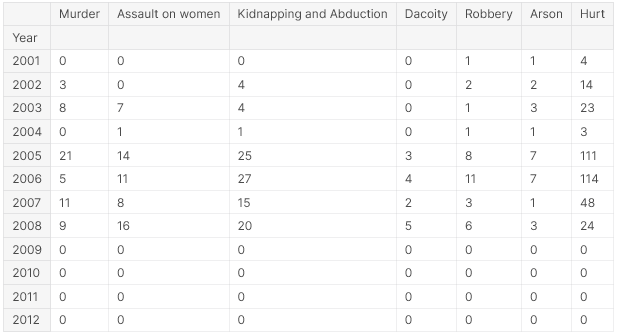
## Distributions

Visualizing distributions of data help understand what the possible values that we can expect are, and how likely each value is. In this section we will cover four kinds of distribution plots and they are,

* Histograms: Can show the distribution of one numerical variable
* KDE plots: Shows a smooth estimated distribution of a single numerical variable
* 2KDE plots: Shows a smooth estimated distribution of a two numerical variables
* Joint plot: Shows 2KDE plots along with the KDE plots of each of the variables individually.

The code below loads our crime dataset, selects data for the first three states storing them in separate DataFrames and displays the data for the third state

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv", index\_col= "Year")  state\_1 = dataset.iloc[ : 12, 1 : 8]  state\_2 = dataset.iloc[12 : 24, 1 : 8]  state\_3 = dataset.iloc[24 : 36, 1 : 8]  state\_3 |

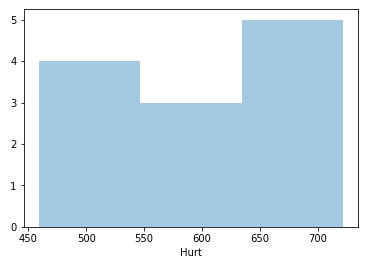


**Histograms**

The function sns.distplot( ) can be used to create a histogram. To create a histogram to visualize the distribution of the “Hurt” column of the first state we can use the function call shown below. Here the arguments are,

* a: the column to plot
* kde: False is a value to provide here. if it is not provided we may get a different result.

>>> sns.distplot(a = state\_1["Hurt"], kde = False)



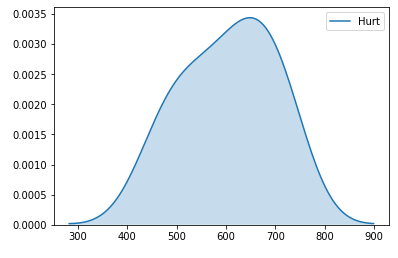
**Density Plots**

Now lets discuss the “kernel density estimate plot”(kdeplot). This type of plot can be easily understood as a smoothed histogram. To make a kdeplot we can use the sns.kdeplot command.

We set the following arguments to the sns.kdeplot command:

* data: It’s purpose is similar to that of the purpose of the data argument in the sns.distplot command
* shade: Setting it’s value to true colors the area under the curve

>>> sns.kdeplot(data = state\_1["Hurt"], shade = True)



**2D kde plots**

We’re not limited to simply a single dimension for kde plots. To create kde plots with 2 dimensions/columns we can use the sns.jointplot command.

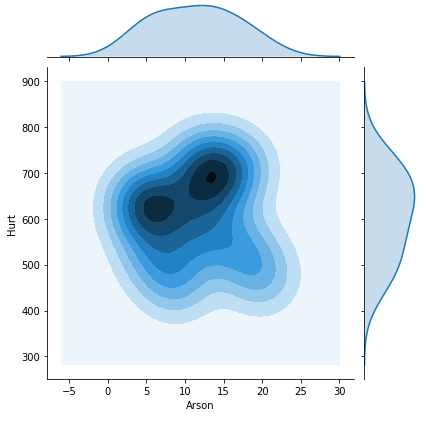
We set the following arguments to the sns.jointplot command:

* x: used to identify the first column to plot
* y: used to identify the second column to plot
* kind: this parameter is set to kde indicating that we are plotting a kde plot.

The color coding tin the plot below is meant to help us understand how likely each part of the plot is. Where the relatively darker regions are highly likely and the relatively lighter regions are less likely to occur.

Also in the plot below observe that in addition the 2D KDE plot that is shown in the centre of the plot, we also have the kde plot of each of the variables made available on the top and right side of plot. Here the kde plot on the top is for the data on the x-axis, the kde plot on the right is for the data on the y-axis.

>>> sns.jointplot(x = state\_1["Arson"], y = state\_1["Hurt"], kind = "kde")

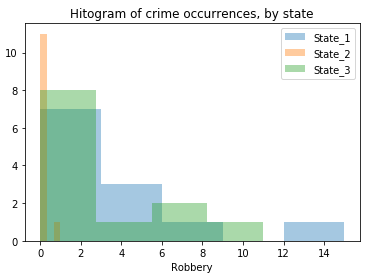


**Color coded plots**

Now we’ll cover plots that can be used to understand the difference between individual states. We’ll see how state 1, state 2 and state 3 differ when it comes to the crime “Robbery”. For plotting color coded plots we’ll be using the sns.displot command for the “Robbery” column of each state that we are looking for.

In the code cell below we create histograms for “Robbery” column of state 1, state 2 and state 3 using the sns.distplot command. Observe that we assign a label to each plot we create. Here the legend does not automatically appear on the plot, so to force it to appear we use the plt.legend( ) function

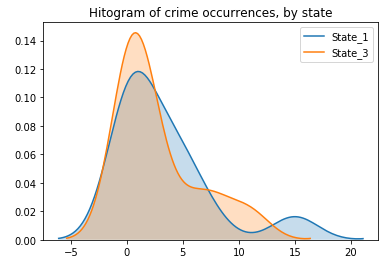
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | sns.distplot(a = state\_1["Robbery"],label = "State\_1", kde = False)  sns.distplot(a = state\_2["Robbery"],label = "State\_2", kde = False)  sns.distplot(a = state\_3["Robbery"],label = "State\_3", kde = False)  plt.title("Hitogram of crime occurrences, by state")  plt.legend() |



Observe that all of these three states have most of the values of the Robbery column close to 0 and that state 1 has once had around 14 cases.

We can also create a KDE plot for every state using the sns.kdeplot command. Just as in the previous example make sure you assign the labels for the column values when calling the sns.kdeplot command

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | sns.kdeplot(data = state\_1["Robbery"],label = "State\_1", shade = True)  sns.kdeplot(data = state\_3["Robbery"],label = "State\_3", shade = True)  plt.title("Hitogram of crime occurrences, by state") |



Observe that for both these states majority of values lies close to 0.

In the next chapters we’ll got through creating your first machine learning models and the entire machine learning work flow.

# Introduction to machine learning

Before we begin creating powerful machine learning models, we’ll first go through what machine learning models are, how they work and how they can be used. Readers who are already familiar with statistical modelling and machine learning before can skip ahead to sections that are suitable to their level.

## Introduction

In this and the next chapter you will create machine learning models to predict the number of murders that occurred in the state by using only the number of each the other crimes that occurred in the same state in that year. We will start by creating basic models with lower accuracy and will gradually build more complex models that have better prediction accuracy.

To understand how machine learning works let’s begin with a prediction model called “decision tree”. Although decision trees are quite simple compared to the other more complex models out there we’ll be using decision tree’s to understand how machine learning models work because they are quite easy to comprehend and also that they are also foundations to other powerful machine learning models.

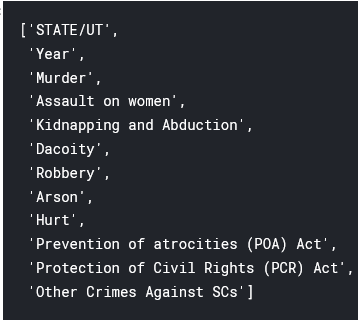
To explain the working of decision tree’s we’ll be using the following scenario. Your friend has made a lot of money simply by real estate speculation. He wants to become a business partner with you because he’s found out that you’re a data science genius. The deal was that you should create models that can predict how much each of the houses are worth and he’ll bring in the money. To get some insight into how your friend use to predict the prices in the past, you ask him how he makes his prediction, to which he respond he responds that

## Creating your first AI model

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26 | import pandas as pd  dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")  dataset = dataset.sample(frac = 1, random\_state = 42)  States = pd.Series(dataset["STATE/UT"])  Years = pd.Series(dataset["Year"])  dataset = dataset.drop(["STATE/UT", "Year"], axis = 1)  def is\_high(row):  if row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] >= 5:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "Yes"  else:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "No"  return row  dataset = dataset.apply(is\_high, axis = "columns")  np.random.seed(42)  nan\_matrix = np.random.random(dataset.shape) < 0.02 # 2% of entries made NaN  dataset = dataset.mask(nan\_matrix)  dataset.insert(0, "Year", Years, True)  dataset.insert(0, "STATE/UT", States, True)  dataset |



>>> list(dataset.columns)



>>> dataset = dataset.dropna(axis = 0)

>>> dataset

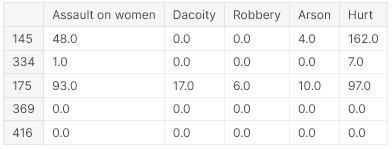


>>> y = dataset.Murder

>>> selected\_features = ['Assault on women','Dacoity','Robbery','Arson','Hurt']

>>> X = dataset[selected\_features]

>>> X.head(5)



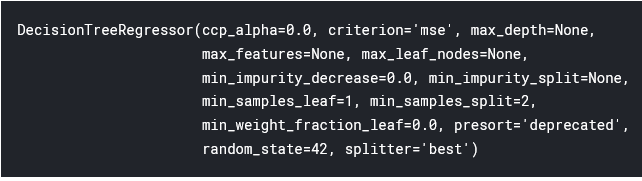
>>> X.describe()



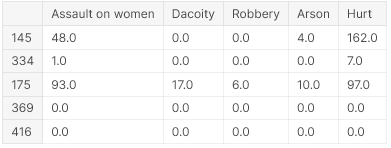
>>> from sklearn.tree import DecisionTreeRegressor

>>> crime\_predictor = DecisionTreeRegressor(random\_state = 42)

>>> crime\_predictor.fit(X, y)

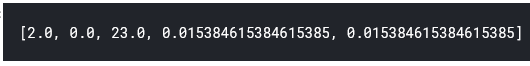


>>> X.head(5)



>>> predictions = crime\_predictor.predict(X.head(5))

>>> list(predictions)



>>> list(dataset["Murder"].head(5))



## Validating your first AI model

>>> from sklearn.metrics import mean\_absolute\_error

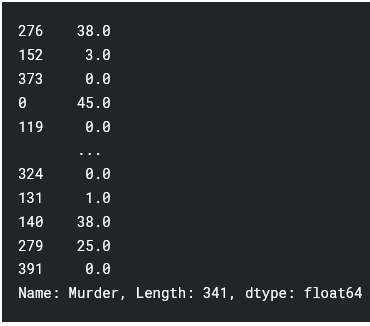
>>> predictions = crime\_predictor.predict(X)

>>> mean\_absolute\_error(y , predictions)



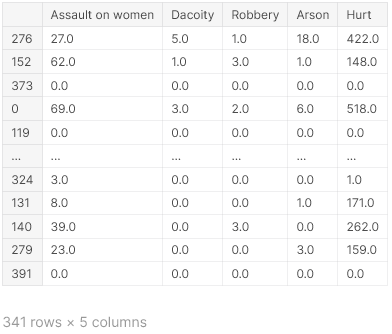
>>> y = dataset.sample(frac = 1, random\_state = 42).Murder

>>> y

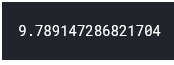


>>> X = dataset.sample(frac = 1, random\_state = 42)[selected\_features]

>>> X



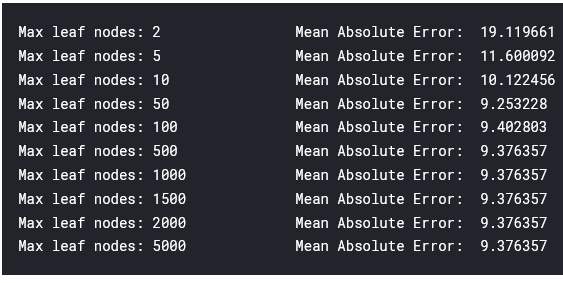
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | from sklearn.model\_selection import train\_test\_split  train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y = train\_test\_split(X, y, random\_state = 42)  crime\_predictor = DecisionTreeRegressor(random\_state = 42)  crime\_predictor.fit(train\_X, train\_y)  val\_predictions = crime\_predictor.predict(val\_X)  print(mean\_absolute\_error(val\_y, val\_predictions)) |



## Underfitting and overfitting

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | def get\_score\_mae(max\_leaf\_nodes, train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y):  model = DecisionTreeRegressor(max\_leaf\_nodes=max\_leaf\_nodes, random\_state = 42)  model.fit(train\_X, train\_y)  val\_predictions = model.predict(val\_X)  mae = mean\_absolute\_error(val\_y, val\_predictions)  return(mae) |

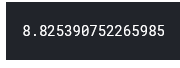
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | for max\_leaf\_nodes in [2, 5, 10, 50, 100, 500, 1000, 1500, 2000, 5000]:  score\_mae = get\_score\_mae(max\_leaf\_nodes, train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y)  print("Max leaf nodes: %d \t\t Mean Absolute Error: %f" %(max\_leaf\_nodes, score\_mae)) |



## The random forest model

>>> from sklearn.ensemble import RandomForestRegressor

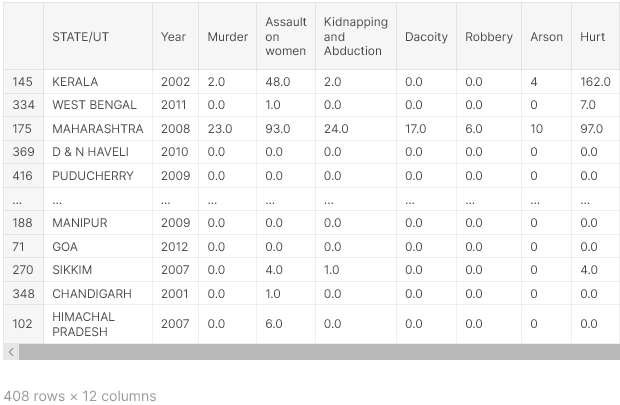
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4 | crime\_predictor = RandomForestRegressor(random\_state = 42)  crime\_predictor.fit(train\_X, train\_y)  val\_predictions = crime\_predictor.predict(val\_X)  print(mean\_absolute\_error(val\_y, val\_predictions)) |



# Intermediate Machine Learning

## Handling missing values

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20 | dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")  dataset = dataset.sample(frac = 1, random\_state = 42)  States = pd.Series(dataset["STATE/UT"])  Years = pd.Series(dataset["Year"])  Arsons = pd.Series(dataset["Arson"])  dataset = dataset.drop(["STATE/UT", "Year", "Arson"], axis = 1)  np.random.seed(42)  nan\_matrix = np.random.random(dataset.shape) < 0.02 # 2% of entries made NaN  dataset = dataset.mask(nan\_matrix)  dataset.insert(0, "Year", Years, True)  dataset.insert(0, "STATE/UT", States, True)  dataset.insert(7, "Arson", Arsons, True)  dataset.dropna(axis=0, subset=['Murder'], inplace=True)  dataset |

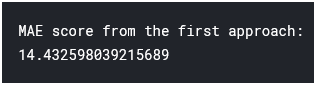


|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12 | from sklearn.ensemble import RandomForestRegressor  from sklearn.model\_selection import train\_test\_split  y = dataset.Murder  selected\_features = ['Assault on women','Dacoity','Robbery','Arson','Hurt']  X = dataset[selected\_features]  train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y = train\_test\_split(X, y , random\_state = 42)  crime\_predictor = RandomForestRegressor(n\_estimators=100, criterion='mae', random\_state = 42) |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | from sklearn.metrics import mean\_absolute\_error  def score\_model(model, t\_X = train\_X, v\_X = val\_X, t\_y = train\_y, v\_y = val\_y):  model.fit(t\_X, t\_y)  predictions = model.predict(v\_X)  return mean\_absolute\_error(v\_y, predictions) |

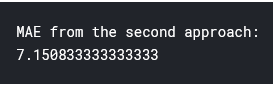
Approach 1

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | # Which columns have missing values  cols\_with\_missing\_values = [col for col in train\_X.columns  if train\_X[col].isnull().any()]  # Drop columns from the training and validation data  reduced\_train\_X = train\_X.drop(cols\_with\_missing\_values, axis=1)  reduced\_val\_X = val\_X.drop(cols\_with\_missing\_values, axis=1)  reduced\_val\_X  print("MAE score from the first approach:")  print(score\_model(crime\_predictor, reduced\_train\_X, reduced\_val\_X, train\_y, val\_y)) |



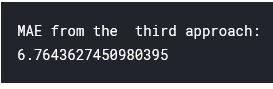
Approach 2

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  1213 | from sklearn.impute import SimpleImputer  # create imputer instance and impute missing values in data  my\_imputer = SimpleImputer()  imputed\_train\_X = pd.DataFrame(my\_imputer.fit\_transform(train\_X))  imputed\_val\_X = pd.DataFrame(my\_imputer.transform(val\_X))  # Imputation removed the column names; putting those names back  imputed\_train\_X.columns = train\_X.columns  imputed\_val\_X.columns = val\_X.columns  print("MAE from the second approach:")  print(score\_model(crime\_predictor, imputed\_train\_X, imputed\_val\_X, train\_y, val\_y)) |



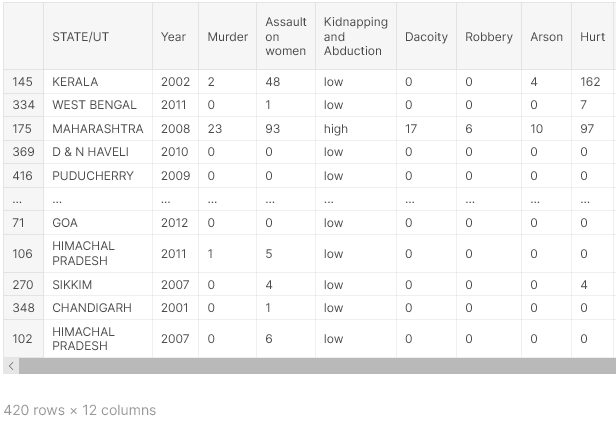
Approach 3

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20 | # Imputing makes changes inplace, so use a copy instead  train\_X\_plus = train\_X.copy()  val\_X\_plus = val\_X.copy()  # create new columns to indicate which entries were imputed  for col in cols\_with\_missing\_values:  train\_X\_plus[col + '\_was\_missing'] = train\_X\_plus[col].isnull()  val\_X\_plus[col + '\_was\_missing'] = val\_X\_plus[col].isnull()  # Perform imputation  my\_imputer = SimpleImputer()  imputed\_train\_X\_plus = pd.DataFrame(my\_imputer.fit\_transform(train\_X\_plus))  imputed\_val\_X\_plus = pd.DataFrame(my\_imputer.transform(val\_X\_plus))  # Imputation removed the column names from DataFrame; put the column names back  imputed\_train\_X\_plus.columns = train\_X\_plus.columns  imputed\_val\_X\_plus.columns = val\_X\_plus.columns  print("MAE from the third approach:")  print(score\_model(crime\_predictor, imputed\_train\_X\_plus, imputed\_val\_X\_plus, train\_y, val\_y)) |



## Handling categorical variables

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15 | dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")  dataset = dataset.sample(frac = 1, random\_state = 42)  def is\_high(row):  if row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] >= 10:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "high"  elif row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] >= 5:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "average"  else:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "low"  return row  dataset = dataset.apply(is\_high, axis = "columns")  dataset |



|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | y = dataset.Murder  selected\_features = ['Assault on women', 'Kidnapping and Abduction', 'Dacoity','Robbery','Arson','Hurt']  X = dataset[selected\_features] |

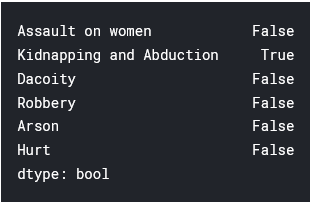
>>> X.head(5)



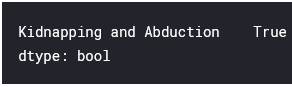
>>> train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y = train\_test\_split(X, y , random\_state = 42)

>>> categorical\_bool = (train\_X.dtypes == 'object')

>>> categorical\_bool



>>> categorical\_bool[categorical\_bool]



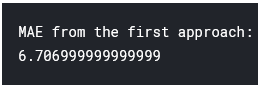
>>> string\_cols = list(categorical\_bool[categorical\_bool].index)

>>> string\_cols # Here DataFrame contains only one column with an object dtype



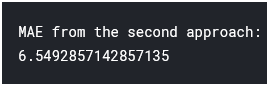
Approach 1

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | # Drop all columns with categorical variables  drop\_train\_X = train\_X.select\_dtypes(exclude=['object'])  drop\_val\_X = val\_X.select\_dtypes(exclude=['object'])  print("MAE from the first approach:")  print(score\_model(crime\_predictor, drop\_train\_X, drop\_val\_X, train\_y, val\_y)) |



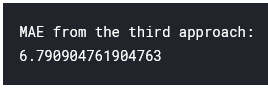
Approach 2

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14 | from sklearn.preprocessing import LabelEncoder  # create and work on the copy to avoid changing original data set  label\_train\_X = train\_X.copy()  label\_val\_X = val\_X.copy()  # Apply a label encoder to every column that is a categorical variable  label\_encoder = LabelEncoder()  for col in string\_cols:  label\_train\_X[col] = label\_encoder.fit\_transform(train\_X[col])  label\_val\_X[col] = label\_encoder.transform(val\_X[col])  print("MAE from the second approach:")  print(score\_model(crime\_predictor, label\_train\_X, label\_val\_X, train\_y, val\_y)) |



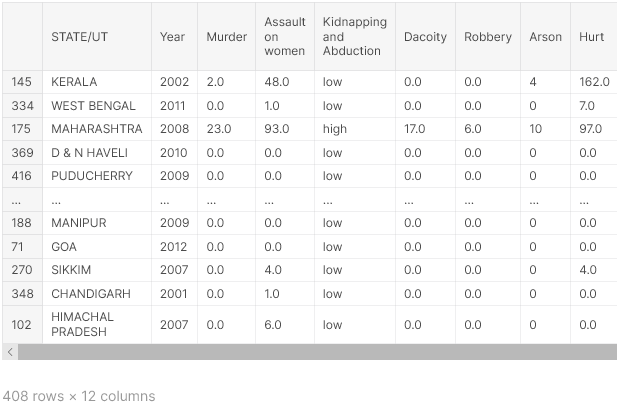
Approach 3

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24 | from sklearn.preprocessing import OneHotEncoder  # Create a one hot encoder instance and apply it to all columns  # with categorical variables; this returns one hot encoded columns  OH\_encoder = OneHotEncoder(handle\_unknown='ignore', sparse=False)  OH\_cols\_train\_X = pd.DataFrame(OH\_encoder.fit\_transform(train\_X[string\_cols]))  OH\_cols\_val\_X = pd.DataFrame(OH\_encoder.transform(val\_X[string\_cols]))  # One-hot encoding process removes the index; put the index back  OH\_cols\_train\_X.index = train\_X.index  OH\_cols\_val\_X.index = val\_X.index  # Remove the categorical columns. We will use the  # one hot encoded versions insead  num\_train\_X = train\_X.drop(string\_cols, axis=1)  num\_val\_X = val\_X.drop(string\_cols, axis=1)  # Add one-hot encoded columns with numerical features  OH\_train\_X = pd.concat([num\_train\_X, OH\_cols\_train\_X], axis=1)  OH\_val\_X = pd.concat([num\_val\_X, OH\_cols\_val\_X], axis=1)  print("MAE from the third approach:")  print(score\_model(crime\_predictor, OH\_train\_X, OH\_val\_X, train\_y, val\_y)) |



## Using pipelines

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22  23  24  25  26  27  28  29  30  31 | dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")  dataset = dataset.sample(frac = 1, random\_state = 42)  States = pd.Series(dataset["STATE/UT"])  Years = pd.Series(dataset["Year"])  Arsons = pd.Series(dataset["Arson"])  dataset = dataset.drop(["STATE/UT", "Year", "Arson"], axis = 1)  def is\_high(row):  if row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] >= 10:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "high"  elif row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] >= 5:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "average"  else:  row["Kidnapping and Abduction"] = "low"  return row  dataset = dataset.apply(is\_high, axis = "columns")  np.random.seed(42)  nan\_matrix = np.random.random(dataset.shape) < 0.02 # 2% of entries made NaN  dataset = dataset.mask(nan\_matrix)  dataset.insert(0, "Year", Years, True)  dataset.insert(0, "STATE/UT", States, True)  dataset.insert(7, "Arson", Arsons, True)  dataset.dropna(axis=0, subset=['Murder'], inplace=True)  dataset |



|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | y = dataset.Murder  selected\_features = ['Assault on women', 'Kidnapping and Abduction', 'Dacoity','Robbery','Arson','Hurt']  X = dataset[selected\_features] |

>>> train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y = train\_test\_split(X, y , random\_state = 42)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | # The term "Cardinality" refers to the number of unique values of feature/column  # make sure you select the categorical columns which has a lower cardinality  categorical\_cols = [col\_name for col\_name in train\_X.columns if  train\_X[col\_name].nunique() < 5 and  train\_X[col\_name].dtype == "object"]  categorical\_cols |



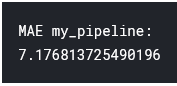
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | # Select the numerical columns of the dataset  numerical\_cols = [col\_name for col\_name in train\_X.columns if  train\_X[col\_name].dtype in ["float64", "int64"]]  numerical\_cols |



|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11  12  13  14  15  16  17  18  19  20  21  22 | from sklearn.compose import ColumnTransformer  from sklearn.pipeline import Pipeline  # Preprocessing for numerical and floating point columns  numerical\_transformer = SimpleImputer(strategy='constant') # fill with a #constant value  # Preprocessing for categorical columns  # A pipeline consisting of two steps  # First fill in absent values with imputation then perform one hot encoding  categorical\_transformer = Pipeline(steps=[  ('imputer', SimpleImputer(strategy='most\_frequent')), # fill with the #most frequent #value  ('onehot', OneHotEncoder(handle\_unknown='ignore'))  ])  # Bundle the preprocessing step for both numerical data and categorical data  preprocessor = ColumnTransformer(  transformers=[  ('num', numerical\_transformer, numerical\_cols),  ('cat', categorical\_transformer, categorical\_cols)  ]) |

>>> prediction\_model = RandomForestRegressor(n\_estimators=100, criterion='mae', random\_state = 42)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | # Bundle both preprocessing and modeling steps using a pipeline  my\_pipeline = Pipeline(steps=[('preprocessor', preprocessor),  ('model', prediction\_model)  ])  print("MAE my\_pipeline:")  print(score\_model(my\_pipeline, train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y)) |

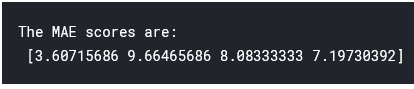


## Cross validation and grid search

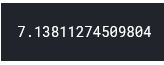
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | my\_pipeline = Pipeline(steps=[('preprocessor', preprocessor),  ('model', RandomForestRegressor  (n\_estimators=100, criterion='mae', random\_state= 42))  ]) |

>>> from sklearn.model\_selection import cross\_val\_score

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | mae\_scores = -1 \* cross\_val\_score(my\_pipeline, X, y,  cv=4,  scoring='neg\_mean\_absolute\_error')  print("The MAE scores are:\n", mae\_scores) |



>>> mae\_scores.mean()



>>> from sklearn.model\_selection import GridSearchCV

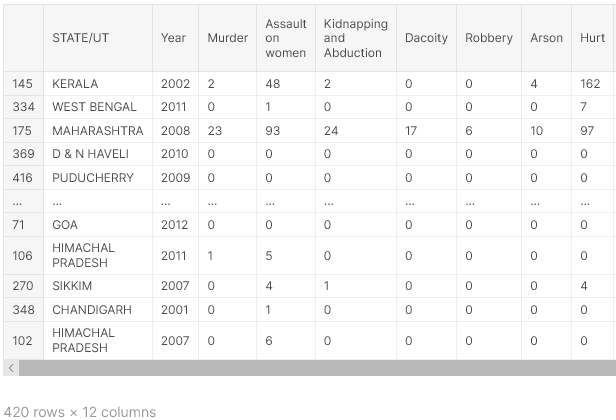
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10  11 | param\_grid = [  {  'model\_\_max\_features': [0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8],  'model\_\_n\_estimators': [50, 100, 150, 200],'model\_\_min\_samples\_split': [5]  },  {  'model\_\_max\_features': [0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8],  'model\_\_n\_estimators': [50, 100, 150, 200],'model\_\_min\_samples\_split': [10]  }  ] |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | search = GridSearchCV(my\_pipeline, param\_grid, n\_jobs=-1)  search.fit(X, y)  print("Best parameter (CV score=%0.4f):" % search.best\_score\_)  print(search.best\_params\_) |



## XGBoosting

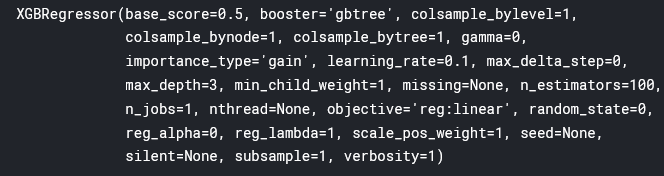
|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | dataset = pd.read\_csv("../input/crimeanalysis/crime\_by\_state\_rt.csv")  dataset = dataset.sample(frac = 1, random\_state = 42)  dataset |



|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | y = dataset.Murder  selected\_features = ['Assault on women', 'Kidnapping and Abduction', 'Dacoity','Robbery','Arson','Hurt']  X = dataset[selected\_features] |

>>> train\_X, val\_X, train\_y, val\_y = train\_test\_split(X, y , random\_state = 42)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | from xgboost import XGBRegressor  regressor = XGBRegressor()  regressor.fit(train\_X, train\_y) |



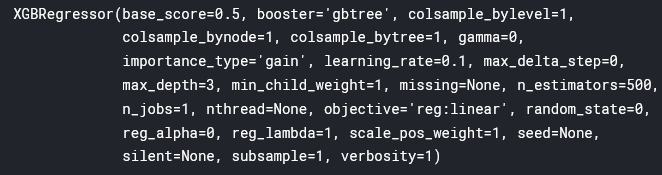
>>> predictions = regressor.predict(val\_X)

>>> print("MAE: " + str(mean\_absolute\_error(predictions, val\_y)))



>>> regressor = XGBRegressor(n\_estimators=500)

>>> regressor.fit(train\_X, train\_y)

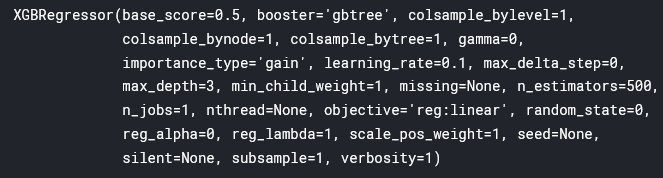


>>> predictions = regressor.predict(val\_X)

>>> print("MAE: " + str(mean\_absolute\_error(predictions, val\_y)))

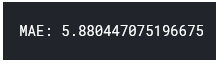


|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | regressor = XGBRegressor(n\_estimators=500)  regressor.fit(train\_X, train\_y,  early\_stopping\_rounds=5,  eval\_set=[(val\_X, val\_y)],  verbose=False) |

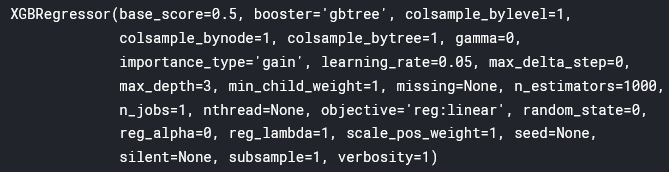


>>> predictions = regressor.predict(val\_X)

>>> print("MAE: " + str(mean\_absolute\_error(predictions, val\_y)))



|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | regressor = XGBRegressor(n\_estimators=1000, learning\_rate=0.05)  regressor.fit(train\_X, train\_y,  early\_stopping\_rounds=4,  eval\_set=[(val\_X, val\_y)],  verbose=False) |

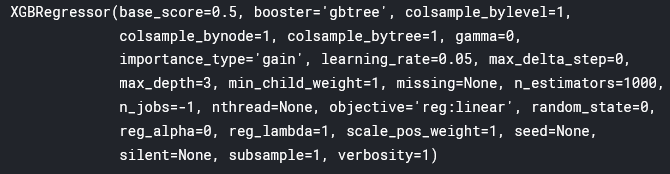


>>> predictions = regressor.predict(val\_X)

>>> print("MAE: " + str(mean\_absolute\_error(predictions, val\_y)))



|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | regressor = XGBRegressor(n\_estimators=1000, learning\_rate=0.05, n\_jobs=-1)  regressor.fit(train\_X, train\_y,  early\_stopping\_rounds=5,  eval\_set=[(val\_X, val\_y)],  verbose=False) |



>>> predictions = regressor.predict(val\_X)

>>> print("MAE: " + str(mean\_absolute\_error(predictions, val\_y)))

